

SWEET'S
ANGLO-SAXON PRIMER

SWEET'S ANGLO-SAXON PRIMER

REVISED THROUGHOUT BY
NORMAN DAVIS

Professor of English Language in the
University of Glasgow

OXFORD
AT THE CLARENDON PRESS

Oxford University Press, Amen House, London E.C.4.

GLASGOW NEW YORK TORONTO MELBOURNE WELLINGTON
BOMBAY CALCUTTA MADRAS KARACHI CAPE TOWN IBADAN

Geoffrey Cumberlege, Publisher to the University

<i>First edition</i>	1882
<i>Second edition</i>	1883
<i>Third edition</i>	1884
<i>Fourth edition</i>	1887
<i>Fifth edition</i>	1888
<i>Sixth edition</i>	1891
<i>Seventh edition</i>	1894
<i>Reprinted 1897,</i>	1901
<i>Eighth edition</i>	1905

PRINTED IN GREAT BRITAIN

PREFACE

SWEET'S *Primer* first appeared in 1882, and was last revised for the eighth edition of 1905. It is not surprising that in the interval methods of presentation should have changed. The *Primer*, though designed as an introduction to Sweet's *Reader*, has tended to fall out of use, but nothing has replaced it; and the *Reader* itself has often been used as a beginner's book, for which it was never intended.

In the belief that an elementary introduction on the lines of the *Primer* is essential, I have tried in the present revision to preserve the policy and the scale of Sweet's work, while rearranging it very considerably in detail. In the grammar—especially in treating the verb, where Sweet's classification has failed to find acceptance—I have sought to present the facts, with as few technical terms as possible, in the same groups as students will find when they come to more advanced books. The bare outlines of relevant phonology have been rearranged with the same object, though I fear that so concise a statement cannot be readily intelligible. Under the paradigms the lists of similarly inflected words have been much increased, and the section on syntax, especially on word-order, has been expanded. In so limited a space the grammar could not aim at anything like completeness. It sets out to cover the texts in this book, and all examples are drawn from them; but I hope that it will serve also as a working elementary grammar for wider use.

The texts have been considerably modified. To provide fuller examples of natural Old English prose, not translated from Latin, I have extended the extracts from the *Chronicle* and added passages from Ælfric's prefaces; and to widen the range of interest I have included well-known passages from the Old English translation of Bede, from *Alexander's Letter*, and from the *Leechdoms*. To make room for these I have had to omit some of the Biblical extracts, and all the sentences which formed the first section. This I have done reluctantly, for they were skilfully chosen to exhibit forms. But I believe—that the changes have probably raised the general level of difficulty a little—that readers will find consecutive prose so much more interesting than disconnected sentences that they will in fact learn more readily from it. All the texts have been revised (all

but I and VII collated with the manuscripts), and a few passages slightly altered accordingly.

I have followed Sweet's practice of normalizing on a conventional Early West Saxon basis, unhistorical as it is, for it remains the best foundation for further study. To ease the transition to later texts I have left one page; extract IX, in the spelling of the manuscripts.

For advice and help in the preparation of this edition I am grateful to Professor C. L. Wrenn, to Dr. C. T. Onions, who read a proof, and especially to Mr. Kenneth Sisam and Miss Celia Sisam, who read the manuscript.

N. D.

UNIVERSITY OF GLASGOW

September 1952

CONTENTS

GRAMMAR

TEXTS

I. FROM THE GOSPEL OF ST. MATTHEW	62
II. OLD TESTAMENT PIECES	66
III. SAMSON	70
IV. FROM THE CHRONICLE	73
V. PREFACES BY ÆLFRIC	78
VI. KING EDMUND	81
VII. FROM THE OLD ENGLISH TRANSLATION OF BEDE'S <i>ECCLESIASTICAL HISTORY</i>	88
VIII. FROM 'ALEXANDER'S LETTER TO ARISTOTLE'	92
IX. MEDICINAL RECIPES	95
NOTES	96
GLOSSARY	106

GRAMMAR

1. The oldest stage of English, from the earliest records (about A.D. 700) to soon after the Norman Conquest, is now generally called 'Old English', though the name 'Anglo-Saxon' is still often used. There were several dialects of Old English. This grammar deals only with the *West Saxon* dialect, the most important for the study of the literature; and with the early form of it—that is, the language of about the time of King Alfred.

SOUNDS

VOWELS

2. The letters representing vowels in O.E.¹ had nearly the same values as in Latin. The following table gives the basic vowels and diphthongs, with examples of their occurrence in stressed syllables, and keywords as a guide to approximate pronunciation. These words are drawn as far as possible from Modern English; but the sounds must have been 'purer' vowels like those of most continental languages, and occasionally French or German illustrations have seemed preferable. It is important to distinguish short vowels from long, which in this book are marked by (-).

a as in G. <i>mann</i>	nama 'name'
ā „ father	stān 'stone'
æ „ hat	glæd 'glad'
ǣ the same, lengthened	dād 'deed'
e as in set	etan 'eat'
ē „ G. <i>see</i>	hē 'hc'
i „ .sit	cwic 'alive'
ī „ machine	wīn 'wine'

¹ Names of languages are abbreviated thus: F., French; G., German; M.n.E., Modern English; O.E., Old English. Such other abbreviations as are not self-evident are explained on p. 106.

<i>o</i>	<i>as in</i> hot (but closer)	god 'god'
<i>ō</i>	<i>„ G. so</i>	gōd 'good'
<i>u</i>	<i>put</i>	sūnu 'son'
<i>ū</i>	<i>rude</i>	nū 'now'
<i>y</i>	<i>F. tu</i>	synn 'sin'
<i>ȳ</i>	<i>G. grün</i>	bryd 'bride'
<i>ea</i>	= æ+a	eald 'old'
<i>ēa</i>	= ē+a	ēast 'east'
<i>eo</i>	= e+o	eorl 'nobleman'
<i>ēo</i>	= ē+o	dēop 'deep'
<i>ie</i>	= i+e	ieldu 'age'
<i>īe</i>	= ī+e	hīran 'hear'

The diphthongs were pronounced with the stress on the first element.

Short *a* before *m* or *n* was often replaced in spelling by *o*: *noma*, *monn* for *nama*, *mann*. In this position the sound evidently was, or could be, between *a* and *o*.

From the position of the tongue in articulation, *ī*, *ē*, *ǣ*, *ȳ* are described in phonetic terms as 'front' vowels, *ū*, *ō*, *u* as 'back'.

CONSONANTS

3. The letters representing consonants were pronounced wherever they were written. So *c* in *cnāwan* 'know', *g* in *gnīdan* 'rub', *w* in *wrītan* 'write' were all sounded. Similarly, consonants written double were pronounced double, or long, as in Italian. Thus the *n*-sound in *sunne* 'sun' must be distinguished from that in *sunu* 'son' just as that in Mn.E. *penknife* differs from that in *penny*.

Most of the consonants were sounded much as in Mn.E. Some of the letters differed in form from their modern equivalents, and two special signs are usually preserved in modern editions—*p* and *ð*. Both of these were used indifferently for the two sounds of *th*, in *thin* and in *then*. In this book only *p* is used, except in extract IX.

Similarly, *f* and *s*, in addition to their modern values, could represent respectively the sounds of *v* and *z*, letters which were not normally used in O.E. These three letters, *f*, *s*, *p*, had the sounds of *f*, *s*, and *th* in *thin* ('breathed' or 'voiceless') initially and finally in accented words; next to 'voiceless' consonants (such as *p*, *t*); and when double: *full* 'full', *lēof* 'dear'; *sunu*, *wæs* 'was'; *penčan* 'think', *wearþ* 'became'; *æfter* 'after', *fæst* 'firm'; *offrian* 'offer', *blissian* 'rejoice', *sippian* 'after'. They had the sounds of *v*, *z*, and *th* in *then* ('voiced') when single between vowels, or between a vowel and another 'voiced' sound (such as *l*, *r*, *m*, *n*): *lufian* 'love', *cēosan* 'choose', *brōþor* 'brother'; *ceorfan* 'cut', *efne* 'even', *māpm* 'treasure'; and probably in words like *of*, *is* in unstressed position.

h initially had the same sound as now: *hē*, *hūs* 'house'. Elsewhere it had the sound of *ch* in Scots *loch* after back vowels and after consonants: *hēah* 'high', *pōhte* 'thought', *Wealh* 'Welshman'; but of *ch* in German *nicht* after front vowels: *fēhp* 'receives', *riht* 'right'. *hw*, as in *hwæt* 'what', *hwil* 'while', had the sound of Mn.E. *wh* as pronounced in northern England and in Scotland. The other groups *hl*, *hn*, *hr* differed from *l*, *n*, *r* as *wh* differs from *w*—that is, they were made in the same way but 'unvoiced', *hl* being nearly the same as Welsh *ll*: *hlāford* 'lord', *hnappian* 'doze', *hrape* 'quickly'.

r initially was probably trilled, as in Scots: *rād* 'advice', *rīdan* 'ride'. Finally and before a consonant it was probably made with the tip of the tongue curved back, as in southwestern dialects of Mn.E. and in American: *är* 'mercy', *eard* 'country', *feorh* 'life'.

c and *g* each had a back (guttural) and a front (palatal) pronunciation. The latter is printed *č*, *ȝ* in this book.

c had the sound of *k* before, and when final after, back vowels and *ȝ*; sometimes also before *ě*, in words which may generally be recognized by their modern pronunciation with *k*: *cann* 'know', *cōl* 'cool', *cuman* 'come', *cyning* 'king', *cēne* 'bold', *bōc* 'book'; also finally after *æ*: *bæc* 'back'; and initially before consonants: *cnāwan* 'know'.

c had a sound like Mn.E. *ch* in *child* when it came before or between the front vowels *i* and *e*, except for the special cases mentioned above: *cild* ‘child’, *cēosan* ‘choose’, *micel* ‘great’; also finally after *i*, *e*, *æ*: *līc* ‘body’, *bēc* ‘books’, *spræc* ‘speech’; and in some words after *n*, *l*: *pencan* ‘think’, *ælc* ‘each’.

sc usually had the sound of Mn.E. *sh*: *scip* ‘ship’, *fisc* ‘fish’. This sound was often written *sce*: *sc(e)olde* ‘should’, *bisc(e)op* ‘bishop’. But *sc* had the sound of *sk* in some words where back vowels prevailed: *āscian* ‘ask’ (pret. *āscode*), and in foreign words such as *scōl* ‘school’, *Scottas* ‘Scots (Irish)’.

g had the sound of *g* in *go* initially before back vowels and *y*; in the group *ng*; before consonants; and when doubled: *gān* ‘go’, *god* ‘god’, *gylden* ‘golden’; *lang* ‘long’, *springan* ‘spring’; *glæd* ‘glad’; *frogga* ‘frog’.

g was sounded as in German *sagen* (like *ch* in *loch*, but with voice) medially between back vowels, and between *l*, *r* and back vowels; and finally after back vowels directly or in consonant groups: *dagas* ‘days’, *boga* ‘bow’, *hālga* ‘saint’, *beorgan* ‘save’; *ge-nōg* ‘enough’, *burg* ‘city’.

g had a sound like Mn.E. *y* in *yet* initially and medially before *i*, *e*: *gē* ‘you’, *giefan* ‘give’, *pegen* ‘servant’; also finally, in word or syllable, after these vowels and *æ*: *hālgi* ‘holy’, *wēg* ‘way’, *dæg* ‘day’, *sægde* ‘said’; and in some words after *r*, *l*: *byrgan* ‘bury’, *fylgan* ‘follow’.

After *n* it sometimes had a sound like Mn.E. *dge* in *edge*: *sprengan* ‘scatter’. *cg* represents this sound lengthened: *ecg* ‘edge’, *secgan* ‘say’.

STRESS

4. The stress usually fell on the first syllable of a word. But when the first syllable was a prefix, usage varied: nouns and adjectives stressed the prefix, verbs the first syllable of the uncompounded word. The prefixes *ge-* and *be-* were never stressed, *for-* rarely. In this book the stress is marked, when it is not on the first syllable, by (·) preceding the stressed syllable: *andswaru* ‘answer’, *andweard* ‘present’, but *ge-lēafa* ‘belief’, *for-giefan* ‘grant’, *tō-berstan* ‘burst’.

SOUND-CHANGES

5. In O.E. neighbouring sounds influenced each other to an extent unknown in Mn.E. Certain sounds modified others in prehistoric O.E., and then were themselves lost; so that the change is visible, but not the cause of it. Some sound-changes had important effects on O.E. accidence, so that a knowledge of them is necessary for an understanding of the grammar. The essentials only are set out here.

VOWELS

6. (1) Before *m* and *n* (the ‘nasal’ consonants), *i* appears instead of *e*, *a* instead of *æ*, *u* instead of *o*. So *bindan* ‘bind’, pret. sing. *band*, past part. *bunden*, contrasted with *bregðan* ‘pull’, *brægd*, *brogden*, of the same class of strong verbs.

(2) O.E. *æ*, which descends from older *a*, reverts to *a* before a single consonant followed by a back vowel: *dæg* ‘day’, gen. sing. *dæges*, but nom. acc. pl. *dagas*, dat. pl. *dagum*.

(3) **Breaking.** The front vowels *æ*, *e* become respectively the diphthongs *ea*, *eo* before *h*, or the groups *h*, *r*, *l*+consonant. So *feohtan* ‘fight’, *weorpan* ‘become’, contrasted with *bregðan* of the same conjugation. But *æ* is affected more than *e*, which is not changed by *l*+consonant. So *helpan* ‘help’ in infin., but in pret. sing., where *æ* would be normal (as *brægd*), *healp*, *feahf*, *wearp* all have *ea*. This change is called ‘breaking’.

(4) The front vowels *æ*, *ɛ* become respectively the diphthongs *ēa*, *ēe* after initial *c*, *g*, *sc*. So *giefan* ‘give’, pret. sing. *gēaf*, pl. *gēafon*, contrasted with *sprecan* ‘speak’, *spræc*, *spræcon*. (The pronoun *gē* ‘you’ is not affected.)

(5) **i-mutation.** The back vowels, the diphthongs *ēa* and *ēo*, and the front vowels *æ* and *ɛ* were modified by the vowel *ī*, or the related consonant (the sound of *y* in Mn.E. *yet*, represented in German and other languages, and in the International Phonetic Alphabet, by *j*) in the following syllable. This gave rise to the following alternations between the unchanged vowels (or their descendants) and their ‘mutated’ variants in

positions in which *i/j* formerly followed. (The *i/j* was mostly lost before surviving records were written down.)

a:æ	<i>as in færþ</i> , 3 sing. pres. indic. of faran 'go'
a+m, n:e	„ stent, „ „ standan 'stand'
ā:ǣ	„ hātt, „ „ hātan 'call'
o:e	„ dehter, dat. sing. of dohtar 'daughter'
ō:ē	„ grēwþ, 3 sing. pres. indic. of grōwan 'grow'
u:y	„ byrig, dat. sing., nom. acc. pl. of burg 'city'
ū:ŷ	„ lȳcþ, 3 sing. pres. indic. of lūcan 'lock'
æ:e	„ settan 'set' compared with sæt 'sat'
e:i	„ cwiþþ, 3 sing. pres. indic. of cweþan 'say'
ea:ie	„ hielt, „ „ healdan 'hold'
ēa:īe	„ hīewþ, „ „ hēawan 'hew'
eo:ie	„ fieht, „ „ feohtan 'fight'
ēo:īe	„ cīest „ „ cēosan 'choose'

Most of these examples are drawn from verbal conjugation, in which this change plays an especially important part; but it affects also the declension of certain nouns, the comparison of certain adjectives and adverbs, and a great many aspects of derivation.¹ The same relation lies behind the alternation of *o* and *y* in associated forms like *gold* 'gold', *gylden* 'golden'; but here it is indirect, for the *y* is the mutation of *u* which was the original vowel in the word. This, the most important of all the O.E. sound-changes, is called 'i-mutation' or 'front mutation'.

(6) Some vowels in unstressed syllables were lost or preserved according to the length of the preceding syllable. A 'long' syllable is one which contains either a long vowel, or a short vowel followed by two consonants: *hūs* 'house', *folk* 'people', *cynn* 'race'.

(a) In a word of three syllables, of which the first is long and

¹ Examples are: *wand* 'wound' (pret. of *windan*): *wendan* 'turn'; *hāl* 'whole': *hālan* 'heal'; *fōda* 'food': *fēdan* 'feed'; *trum* 'strong': *trymman* 'strengthen'; *fūl* 'foul': *āfýlan* 'defile'; *læg* 'lay' (pret. of *licgan*): *lecgan* 'lay'; *cweþan* 'say': *cwide* 'speech'; *eald* 'old': *ieldra* 'older'; *tēam* 'progeny': *tīeman* 'teem'; *heord* 'herd': *hierde* 'herdsman'; *ge-strēon* 'possession': *ge-strīenan* 'gain'.

the second contains a short vowel followed by a single consonant, the vowel of the second syllable is generally lost. This affects mainly the declension of nouns with two syllables in the nominative, which would become trisyllabic by the addition of inflectional endings: *engel* 'angel', but gen. sing. *engles*, nom. acc. pl. *englas*; *hēafod* 'head', gen. sing. *hēafdes*.

(b) After a long monosyllable final *u* is lost: *scip* 'ship', nom. acc. pl. *scipu*, but *hūs* 'house', pl. *hūs*.

(7) **Gradation.** Certain vowels are associated with others in fixed series, as in Mn.E. series like *drive*, *drove*, *driven* or *ring*, *rang*, *rung*. In O.E., as in Mn.E., these series appear most clearly in the 'strong' verbs, where they are more numerous and more complex than their modern descendants (for examples see §§ 62–67); but they run through the whole language, and are most important in the study of etymology.¹ This phenomenon is called 'gradation'. Its origin lies far back in prehistoric times, and is not fully understood; it is thought to depend ultimately on variation of accent.

CONSONANTS

7. (1) Between vowels, and between *l*, *r* and a vowel, *h* is lost. The vowels which thus fall together contract into a long diphthong; and the vowel preceding the *l* or *r*, if short, is lengthened: *feoh* 'money', gen. sing. *fēos*; *Wealh* 'Welshman', nom. acc. pl. *Wēlas*; *fēorh* 'life', gen. sing. *fēores*.

(2) In oblique cases of some words *w*, following a consonant, comes before an inflectional ending beginning with a vowel. In the uninflected forms of such words *w* is replaced by *-u*, and before an inflectional ending beginning with a consonant, by *o*: *gearw-es* gen. sing. of *gearu* 'ready', acc. sing. masc. *gearo-ne*, gen. sing. fem. *gearo-re*.

(3) Certain pairs of consonants alternate, especially in the

¹ Examples are: *be-lifan* 'remain': *lāf* 'remnant'; *writan* 'write': *ge-writ* 'writing' (cf. § 62); *cēosan* 'choose', pret. pl. *curon*, to which is related by mutation *cyre* 'choice'; *būgan* 'bend': *boga* 'bow' (cf. § 63); *faran* 'go': *fōr* 'journey' (cf. § 67).

conjugation of strong verbs. The pairs are *s:r*, *p:d*, *h:g*, occasionally *h:w*. The first member of each pair appears in infin., pres., and pret. sing.; the second member in pret. pl. and past part.: *cēosan*, pret. sing. *cēas*: pret. pl. *curon*, past part. *coren*; *cweþan*, *cwæþ*: *cwādon*, *cweden*; *tēah* ‘drew’, pl. *tugon*; *seah* ‘saw’, pl. *sāwon*. The same variation extends to formations outside the verbal system: *cwide* ‘speech’, related to *cweþan*; *hryre* ‘fall’ to *hrēosan* (cf. § 6 (7)). It depends on variation of stress at an early stage of the language.

For modifications of consonants before verbal endings see § 57.

INFLEXIONS

NOUNS

8. Nouns are grouped according to their inflexions. Those which use predominantly the ending *n*, such as *nama* ‘name’, acc. gen. dat. sing., nom. acc. pl. *naman*, are commonly called ‘weak’.¹ The others, such as *dæg* ‘day’ (masc.), gen. sing. *dæges*, nom. acc. pl. *dagas*, or *giefu* ‘gift’ (fem.), acc. gen. dat. sing. *gīfe*, nom. acc. pl. *gīfa*, are mostly ‘strong’; but there are a few minor groups.

9. There are three genders, masculine, feminine, and neuter. The gender of some nouns agrees with the sex of the persons they denote, as *se mann* ‘the man’, *seo dohtor* ‘the daughter’. This may be called ‘natural gender’. But nouns denoting inanimate objects may have masculine or feminine, as well as neuter, ‘grammatical gender’, as *se stān* ‘the stone’ (masc.), *seo duru* ‘the door’ (fem.); and some nouns denoting living beings are neuter, as *þæt wīf* ‘the woman’.

Grammatical gender is known only by the gender of the

¹ When used of nouns and adjectives, ‘weak’ is applied to the declensions in which earlier formal distinctions of case have been weakened by the loss of endings, so that the common suffix *-n* must fulfil several different functions. When used of verbs (§ 52) it is applied to those which form their past tense by the aid of a suffix, instead of by internal change of root-vowel.

article and other words connected with the noun, and, to some extent, by its form. All nouns ending in *-a* are masculine, as *se mōna* ‘the moon’. (*Sēo sunne* ‘the sun’ is fem.) Those ending in *-dōm*, *-hād*, *-scipe* are also masculine: *se wīsdōm* ‘wisdom’, *se cīldhād* ‘childhood’, *se frēondscipe* ‘friendship’. Those ending in *-nes*, *-pu*, *-u/-o* (from adjectives, § 20), *-rāden*, *-ung* are feminine: *sēo rihtwīsnes* ‘righteousness’, *sēo strengpu* ‘strength’, *sēo bieldu* ‘boldness’ (from *beald*), *sēo mannrāden* ‘allegiance’, *sēo scotung* ‘shooting’.

Compounds follow the gender of their last element, as *pæt burg-geat* ‘the city-gate’, from *sēo burg* and *pæt geat*. Hence *se wīf-mann* ‘the woman’ is masculine.

10. There are four case forms in nouns, nominative, accusative, genitive, and dative. Adjectives and some pronouns have in addition distinct forms for an instrumental, but in nouns the function of this case is performed by the dative. In form, certain cases are identical: the accusative is the same as the nominative in all plurals, and in the singular of all neuters and all strong masculines. Masculine and neuter nouns differ in the plural only in nominative and accusative, and in the singular only in the accusative of weak nouns, which in neuters is the same as the nominative. The genitive plural of nearly all nouns ends in *-a* (sometimes preceded by *-en-*), the dative plural in *-um*.

Weak or *-n* Declension

11. This declension contains nouns of all three genders; but neuters are very few, virtually only *ēage* ‘eye’ and *ēare* ‘ear’. The nominative masculine ends in *-a*, as *nama* ‘name’, feminine and neuter in *-e*, as *sunne* ‘sun’, *ēage* ‘eye’:

Masc.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Pl.</i>
<i>N.</i> nam-a	nam-an
<i>A.</i> nam-an	nam-an
<i>G.</i> nam-an	nam-ena
<i>D.</i> nam-an	nam-um

Fem.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Pl.</i>
sunn-e	sunn-an
sunn-an	sunn-an
sunn-an	sunn-ena
sunn-an	sunn-um

*Neut.**Sing.* *Pl.*

<i>NA.</i> ēag-e	ēag-an
<i>G.</i> ēag-an	ēag-ena
<i>D.</i> ēag-an	ēag-um

Nouns of this declension, especially masculines, are very numerous. All nouns in *-a* are declined like *nama*, e.g. *cnapa* ‘boy’, *gēfēra* ‘companion’, *flota* ‘fleet’, *fōda* ‘food’, *guma* ‘man’, *ge-lēafa* ‘belief’, *mōna* ‘moon’, *mūþa* ‘mouth of river’, *oxa* ‘ox’, *gērēfa* ‘reeve’, *steorra* ‘star’, *swēora* ‘neck’, *tēona* ‘injury’, *tīma* ‘time’, *pēowa* ‘servant’, *wita* ‘councillor’, *gēwuna* ‘habit’, *wyrhta* ‘worker’. *Ieldran* ‘ancestors’ occurs in pl. only.

Feminines like *sunne* are: *cirīce* ‘church’, *eorpe* ‘earth’, *fāmne* ‘virgin’, *heorte* ‘heart’, *hlāfdīge* ‘lady’, *mæsse* ‘mass’, *nādre* ‘snake’, *tunge* ‘tongue’, *wīse* ‘manner’.

A few nouns of this declension ending in a long vowel or diphthong contract, and in effect add only the consonants of the case-endings, not the vowels: *gēfēa* (m.) ‘joy’, *gēfēan*; *lēo* (m. or f.) ‘lion(ess)’, *lēon*; *twēo* (m.) ‘doubt’, *twēon*.

Strong Declensions

12. There is a marked difference of inflexion between masculine and neuter on the one hand, feminine on the other (§ 10).

Masculine

13. (a) Most masculines of this declension end in a consonant, as *stān* ‘stone’, *engel* ‘angel’:

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Pl.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Pl.</i>
<i>NA.</i>	stān	stān-as	engel	engl-as
<i>G.</i>	stān-es	stān-a	engl-es	engl-a
<i>D.</i>	stān-e	stān-um	engl-e	engl-um

Like *stān* are: *āþ* ‘oath’, *beorg* ‘hill’, *cniht* ‘youth’, *dāl* ‘part’, *dōm* ‘judgement’, *eard* ‘country’, *eorl* ‘nobleman’, *fisc* ‘fish’, *gāst* ‘spirit’, *gēard* ‘enclosure’, *hām* ‘home’, *hlāf* ‘loaf’, *mābm* ‘treasure’, *prēost* ‘priest’, *rāp* ‘rope’, *tūn* ‘enclosure’, *pēow* ‘servant’, *wēg* ‘way’, *wer* ‘man’; also *cyning* ‘king’, *hlāford*

'lord', *wisdom* 'wisdom', and other disyllables with a long second syllable.

Like *engel* (§ 6 (6a)) are: *dryhten* 'lord', *ealdor* 'prince', *ēbel* 'native land', and a few with short first syllable: *fugol* 'bird', *nægēl* 'nail', *peġen* 'servant'.

Dæg 'day' changes its vowel in the plural (§ 6 (2)): *dæges*, *dæge*; *dagas*, *daga*, *dagum*. So also *hwæl* 'whale', *stæf* 'staff'.

Wealh 'Welshman' drops *h* in inflexion and lengthens the diphthong (§ 7 (1)): *Wēales*, *Wēalas*, &c. So also *feorh* 'life' (both masc. and neut.), *feōres*, &c.

A few nouns which mainly follow this declension often have *-a* instead of *-e* in dat. sing. The most important are: *feld* 'field', *ford* 'ford', *weald* 'forest', *sumor* 'summer', *winter* 'winter'.

Mōnap 'month' has nom. acc. plural unchanged.

(b) Some end in *-e*, as *ende* 'end'. The *-e* drops before the case-endings: *ende*, *endes*, *ende*; *endas*, *enda*, *endum*. So also *hierde* 'herdsman', and agent nouns in *-ere* like *fiscere* 'fisherman'.

(c) Many nouns in *-e* have a short first syllable: *cwide* 'speech', *cyre* 'choice', *eġe* 'fear', *hete* 'hatred', *hryre* 'fall', *lyre* 'loss', *mete* 'food' (pl. *mettas*), *sige* 'victory', *sleġe* 'killing', *stede* 'place', *wine* 'friend', and abstracts in *-scipe*, as *frēondscipe* 'friendship'.

Here 'army' often has *-(i)ġ(e)-* before case-endings: *her(i)ġes*, *her(i)ġe*; *her(i)ġ(e)as*, *her(i)ġ(e)a*, *her(i)ġum*; but *heres*, *heras*, &c., also occur.

Plurals in *-e*

14. Several nouns have nom. acc. pl. in *-e* instead of *-as*. These are mostly names of peoples: *Dene* 'Danes', *Engle* 'English', *Mierce* 'Mercians', *Norþ(an)hymbre* 'Northumbrians'; *Seaxe* 'Saxons', and compounds of *-ware*, *-sāte* 'dwellers', as *Cantware* 'men of Kent', *Sumorsāte* 'men of Somerset'; but there are a few common nouns occurring only in plural: *ielde* 'men', *lēode* 'people'. *Wine* sometimes has plural in *-e*, as well as *-as*; so also, less often, *stede*, *cwide*.

Seaxe, Mierce have gen. pl. *Seaxna, Miercna*. *Dene, wine* have alternative gen. pl. *Denig(e)a, winig(e)a*.

Neuter

15. Most end in a consonant, as *scip* ‘ship’, *hūs* ‘house’:

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Pl.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Pl.</i>
<i>NA.</i>	<i>scip</i>	<i>scip-u</i>	<i>hūs</i>	<i>hūs</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>scip-es</i>	<i>scip-a</i>	<i>hūs-es</i>	<i>hūs-a</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>scip-e</i>	<i>scip-um</i>	<i>hūs-e</i>	<i>hūs-um</i>

Like *scip* are short monosyllables and their compounds: *god* ‘(heathen) god’, *ge·bed* ‘prayer’, *ge·writ* ‘writing’.

Disyllables with long first syllable generally lose the vowel of the second syllable in inflexion (§ 6 (6a)): *dēofol* ‘devil’, *dēofles*, *dēoflu*. So also *mynster* ‘monastery’, *wāpen* ‘weapon’, *wundor* ‘wonder’. *Hēafod* ‘head’ has pl. *hēafodu* or *hēafdu*.

Those in *-et* and *-en* usually double the consonant: *bærnet*, ‘burning’, *bærnette*; *fæsten* ‘stronghold’, *fæstenum*.

Fæt ‘vessel’ changes its vowel in plural (§ 6 (2)): *fætes*, *fæte*; *fatu*, *fata*, *fatum*. So also *bæp* ‘bath’. *Geat* ‘gate’ generally has pl. *gatu*, *gata*, *gatum*.

Feoh ‘money’ drops *h* in inflexion and lengthens the diphthong (§ 7 (1)): *fēos*, *fēo*.

Like *hūs* are nouns with long single or final syllable (§ 6 (6b)): *bān* ‘bone’, *bearn* ‘child’, *cild* ‘child’ (see also § 26), *dēor* ‘wild beast’, *flōd* ‘flood’ (also masc.), *folc* ‘people’, *gold* ‘gold’, *gēar* ‘year’, *land* ‘land’, *līc* ‘body’, *mōd* ‘mind’, *ge·mōt* ‘meeting’, *scēap* ‘sheep’, *ping* ‘thing’, *wif* ‘woman’, *word* ‘word’.

Disyllables with short first syllable keep the medial vowel in inflexion, and generally have no *-u* in nom. acc. pl.: *werod* ‘troop’, *werodes*, &c.; *wāter* ‘water’ has pl. *wāteru* beside *wāter*.

16. Some end in *-e*, as *rīce* ‘kingdom’, *wīte* ‘punishment’:

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Pl.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Pl.</i>
<i>NA.</i>	<i>rīc-e</i>	<i>rīc-u, -iu</i>	<i>wīt-e</i>	<i>wīt-u</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>rīc-es</i>	<i>rīc-a</i>	<i>wīt-es</i>	<i>wīt-a</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>rīc-e</i>	<i>rīc-um</i>	<i>wīt-e</i>	<i>wīt-um</i>

Like *rīce* is *stycce* ‘piece’.

Like *wīte* are *ærrende* ‘message’, *ge-pēode* ‘language’.

With short first syllable is *spere* ‘spear’.

Feminine

17. Feminines with short root syllable end in *-u* in nom. sing., those with long root syllable have no ending (§ 6 (6b)); so *giefu* ‘gift’, *lār* ‘teaching’:

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Pl.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Pl.</i>
<i>N.</i> gief-u	gief-a, -e	lār	lār-a, -e
<i>A.</i> gief-e	gief-a, -e	lār-e	lār-a, -e
<i>G.</i> gief-e	gief-a, -ena	lār-e	lār-a, -ena
<i>D.</i> gief-e	gief-um	lār-e	lār-um

Like *giefu* are: *andswaru* ‘answer’, *lufu* ‘love’, *scamu* ‘shame’, *talu* ‘tale’, *wicu* ‘week’.

Like *lār* are: *ār* ‘mercy’, *feorm* ‘food’, *healf* ‘half’, *heall* ‘hall’, *lāf* ‘remainder’, *mearc* ‘boundary’, *rōd* ‘cross’, *scīr* ‘shire’, *sorg* ‘sorrow’, *spræc* ‘speech’, *stōw* ‘place’, *pēod* ‘people’, *wund* ‘wound’.

Disyllabic words with long first syllable lose the medial vowel (§ 6 (6a)): *sāwol* ‘soul’, *sāwle*, &c.; also *ceaster* ‘city’, *frōfor* ‘comfort’.

Nouns in *-en* double the *n* in inflexion: *byrpen* ‘burden’, *byrpenne*; so those in *-rāden*, as *hierdrāden* ‘guardianship’.

Those in *-nes* similarly double the *s*: *gōdnes* ‘goodness’, *gōdnesse*, &c.

Mād ‘meadow’ and *lās* ‘pasture’ add *w* before inflexional endings other than *-um*: *mādwē*, *lāswe*; but *mādum*.

18. A considerable group of feminines has acc. sing. the same as nom., and *-e* regularly in nom. acc. pl. All these have long root syllables. Some of the most important are: *āht* ‘property’, *brȳd* ‘bride’, *cwēn* ‘queen’, *cyst* ‘virtue’, *dād* ‘deed’, *fierd* ‘army’, *hās* ‘command’, *lyft* ‘air’, *miht* ‘power’, *nīed* ‘need’, *tīd* ‘time’, *wēn* ‘hope’, *wynn* ‘joy’, *wyrd* ‘fate’, *wyrt* ‘plant’.

Minor Declensions

19. -u Declension. This includes both masculine and feminine nouns. Most have short root syllables, and -u in nom. acc. sing. The few with long root syllables have no -u (§ 6 (6b)). Inflection of masculine and feminine is identical; so *sunu* (m.) 'son', *hand* (f.) 'hand':

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Pl.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Pl.</i>
<i>N.A.</i>	sun-u	sun-a	hand	hand-a
<i>G.</i>	sun-a	sun-a	hand-a	hand-a
<i>D.</i>	sun-a	sun-um	hand-a	hand-um

Like *sunu* is the masc. *wudu* 'wood' and the fem. *duru* 'door'.

Like *hand* is the fem. *flōr* 'floor'.

20. Also with -u (-o) in nom. sing., but otherwise distinct, are two groups of feminine abstract nouns formed from adjectives: one with ending -py, as *strengpy* 'strength', the other with ending -u (-o), as *bieldu*, *bieldo* 'boldness', *ieldu* 'age', *menigū* 'multitude'. These often have -e in the oblique cases, like *giefu*; but they are often not declined at all in the singular, and the plural of such nouns, naturally, hardly ever occurs.

21. Three small but important groups form some of their cases by change of root-vowel, according to § 6 (5), instead of by adding endings:

22. (1) 'Mutation plurals', both masculine and feminine, as *fōt* (m.) 'foot', *burg* (f.) 'city':

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Pl.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Pl.</i>
<i>N.A.</i>	fōt	fēt	burg	byrig
<i>G.</i>	fōt-es	fōt-a	byrig,	burg-a
<i>D.</i>	fēt	fōt-um	byrig	burg-um

Like *fōt* are *mann* (*menn*), *tōþ* 'tooth' (*tēþ*).

Like *burg* are *bōc* 'book' (*bēč*), *gōs* 'goose' (*gēs*), *mūs* 'mouse' (*mýs*). *Niht* 'night' belongs to this class, but generally has the same vowel throughout; it sometimes follows § 18.

23. (2) -r nouns, all denoting relationship: *fæder* 'father', *mōdor* 'mother', *dohtor* 'daughter', *brōþor* 'brother', *sweostor* 'sister'. The gender is natural:

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Pl.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Pl.</i>
<i>N.A.</i>	<i>brōþor</i>	<i>brōþor,</i> <i>brōþr-u</i>	<i>fæder</i>	<i>fæder-as</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>brōþor</i>	<i>brōþr-a</i> •	<i>fæder,</i> <i>fæder-es</i>	<i>fæder-a</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>brēþer</i>	<i>brōþr-um</i>	<i>fæder</i>	<i>fæder-um</i>

Like *brōþor* is *mōdor*, which sometimes has *mēder* in gen. as well as dat. sing. *Dohtor* has dat. sing. *dehter*, nom. acc. pl. *dohtor, -tru*. *Sweostor* is unchanged throughout sing. and nom. acc. pl. Only *fæder* has adopted the ordinary strong pl. endings.

24. (3) -nd nouns, formed from the present participle of verbs: only *frēond* 'friend', *feond* 'enemy' (both masc.):

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Pl.</i>
<i>N.A.</i>	<i>frēond</i>	<i>frēond, frēond-as</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>frēond-es</i>	<i>frēond-a</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>frēond, frēond-e</i>	<i>frēond-um</i>

25. Other nouns from participles, in -end, have the adjectival gen. pl. ending -ra. They are mostly masculine. So *būend* 'dweller':

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Pl.</i>
<i>N.A.</i>	<i>būend</i>	<i>būend, būend-e, būend-as</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>būend-es</i>	<i>būend-ra</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>būend-e</i>	<i>būend-um</i>

So also *hālend* 'Saviour', *wealdend* 'ruler'.

26. A few neuters have -r- before the plural endings: *lamb* 'lamb' is like *land* in sing. (§ 15), but has pl. *lamb-ru*, *lamb-ra*, *lamb-rum*. So also *āg* 'egg'. *Cild* 'child' sometimes has these endings.

Proper names

27. Native names of persons are declined like other nouns—*Ælf-red*, g. *Ælfred-es*, d. *Ælfred-e*; *Ead-burg* (fem.),

g. *Eadburg-e*, &c. Foreign personal names sometimes follow the analogy of native names: *Crīst*, *Salomon* have g. *Crīst-es*, *Salomon-es*, d. *Crīst-e*, *Salomon-e*. Sometimes they are declined as in Latin, especially those in *-us*; but often with a mixture of English endings, and with the Latin endings used somewhat loosely, the accusative ending serving for the dative as well: *Cyrus*, g. *Cȳres*, a. *Cȳrum*, d. *Cȳrum* (as *tō þām cyninge Cȳrum*).

Many names of countries and districts are compounds, formed from the name of the inhabitants followed by *land*. The first element is commonly in the gen. pl., but ordinary compounds also occur: *Engla-land* ‘land of the English, England’, *Norphymbra-land* ‘Northumbria’; but *Scot-land*. The name of the inhabitants is very often used for the country itself: *on East-englum* ‘in East Anglia’, lit. ‘among the East Anglians’. Similarly *on Angel-cynne* ‘in England’, lit. ‘among the English race’ (but *Angelcynnes land* is also frequent), *Israhēla-þēod* ‘Israel’. Many other such names are taken from Latin, as *Breten* ‘Britain’, *Cent* ‘Kent’, *Germānia* ‘Germany’. Such names are sometimes left undeclined: *on Cent*, *tō Hierusalēm*. Those ending in *-a* take *-e* in the oblique cases: g. *Germānie*.

ADJECTIVES

28. Adjectives have strong and weak inflexions, but they differ from nouns in that every adjective (with very few exceptions) is capable of being declined *both* strong *and* weak. The use of one or the other form is a matter of syntax, depending on the relation of the adjective to neighbouring words (§ 89). Adjectives have three gender forms, and the same cases as nouns; and in addition, in masculine and neuter singular the strong declension has an *instrumental* case of distinct form. In feminine and plural, and in the weak declension, the dative serves the same purpose.

Strong Declension

29. Many endings (italicized in the paradigm) differ from

those of nouns. Masculine and neuter again stand together, and differ markedly from feminine. So

(a) *cwic* 'alive':

	<i>Sing.</i>		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
<i>N.</i>	<i>cwic</i>	<i>cwic</i>	<i>cwic-u</i>
<i>A.</i>	<i>cwic-ne</i>	<i>cwic</i>	<i>cwic-e</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>cwic-es</i>	<i>cwic-es</i>	<i>cwic-re</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>cwic-um</i>	<i>cwic-um</i>	<i>cwic-re</i>
<i>I.</i>	<i>cwic-e</i>	<i>cwic-e</i>	(<i>cwic-re</i>)

	<i>Pl.</i>		
	<i>NA.</i>	<i>cwic-u</i>	<i>cwic-a, -e</i>
	<i>all genders</i>		
<i>G.</i>		<i>cwic-ra</i>	
<i>D.</i>		<i>cwic-um</i>	

(b) *gōd* 'good' is similar except as follows (§ 6 (6b)):

<i>N. Sing.</i>	<i>gōd</i>	<i>gōd</i>	<i>gōd</i>
<i>NA. Pl.</i>	<i>gōd-e</i>	<i>gōd</i>	<i>gōd-a, -e</i>

In later texts all genders of the plural (of both types) commonly have the form of the masculine.

(a) Like *cwic* are adjectives with short root syllable: *til* 'good', *sum* 'some, a certain' (but nom. sing. fem. *sum* also occurs), and those with short final syllable, such as the numerous compounds ending in *-lic* and *-sum*: *fār-lic* 'sudden', *ge-hier-sum* 'obedient'.

Disyllabic adjectives with long first syllable generally lose the medial vowel before inflexional endings beginning with a vowel (§ 6 (6a)): *hālig* 'holy', *hālges*, *hālgum*, &c. So also, though with short first syllable, *micel* 'great', *miclu*, *micles*, *miclum*, &c., and often *yfel* 'bad', *yfles*, &c. The vowel is, of course, retained before endings beginning with a consonant: *hāligne*, *micelre*, *yfelra*.

Disyllabic adjectives (and participles) with long first syllable sometimes have nom. sing. fem. without ending, as well as the

regular form in *-u*. Thus *hālig* may be masculine, feminine, or neuter.

Adjectives with *æ* in the root syllable, as *glæd* 'glad', *hwæt* 'vigorous', change it to *a* before all endings beginning with a vowel: *glades*, *gladum*, *glade*, but *glædne*, *glædre*, &c.

Those in *-e*, as *bliþe* 'joyful', drop it in all inflexions: *bliþne*, *bliþu*, *bliþre*, &c.

Those in *-u*, as *gearu* 'ready', change the *-u* to *-w-* before vowels, to *-o-* before consonants (§ 7 (2)): *gearwes*, *gearone*.

Those ending in a double consonant simplify it before consonants: *nytt* 'useful', *nytne*.

(b) Like *gōd* are adjectives with long root or final syllable: *hāl* 'whole', *eald* 'old', *sīge-fæst* 'victorious'.

Disyllables with short first syllable vary: *maniȝ* 'many' has nom. sing. fem. and nom. acc. pl. neut. regularly *maniȝ*, but also *manigu*.

Hēah 'high' drops its second *h* in inflexion and contracts: *hēas*, *hēam*, *hēare*, nom. pl. *hēa*, &c. The acc. sing. masc. is mostly *hēanne*.

Fēa 'few' has only plural inflexions: gen. *fēara*, dat. *fēam*. Regular forms *fēawe*, *fēawum* also occur.

Fela 'many' is indeclinable.

Weak Declension

30. The weak inflexions of adjectives are the same as those of nouns, except that the gen. pl. usually ends in *-ra*, as in the strong adjective.

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Pl.</i>	
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>All genders</i>
<i>N.</i>	gōd-a	gōd-e	gōd-e	gōd-an
<i>A.</i>	gōd-an	gōd-e	gōd-an	gōd-an
<i>G.</i>	gōd-an	gōd-an	gōd-an	gōd-ra (-ena)
<i>D.</i>	gōd-an	gōd-an	gōd-an	gōd-um

The changes of vowel and consonant in particular words are as in the strong declension.

Comparison

31. The comparative is formed by adding *-ra*, and is always declined weak: *lēof* 'dear', comp. masc. *lēofra*, fem. *lēofre*, pl. *lēofran*, &c. Adjectives in *-e* drop it before the ending: *māre* 'famous', *mārra*.

The superlative is formed by adding *-ost*, and may be either weak or strong: *lēofost(a)*, *mārost(a)*.

32. A few adjectives have mutated vowels (§ 6 (5)) in comparative and superlative, and *-est* as the superlative ending (contracted to *-st* in one or two words). The most important are:

<i>eald</i>	'old'	<i>ieldra</i>	<i>ieldest</i>
<i>geong</i>	'young'	<i>gingra</i>	<i>gingest</i>
<i>lang</i>	'long'	<i>lengra</i>	<i>lengest</i>
<i>strang</i>	'strong'	<i>strengra</i>	<i>strengest</i>
<i>hēah</i>	'high'	<i>hierra</i>	<i>hiehst</i>

33. The following form comparative and superlative from roots different from those of the positive:

<i>gōd</i>	'good'	<i>betera, betra</i>	<i>betst</i>
		<i>sēlra</i>	<i>sēlest</i>
<i>yfel</i>	'bad'	<i>wiersa</i>	<i>wier(re)st</i>
<i>mīcel</i>	'great'	<i>māra</i>	<i>māst</i>
<i>lȳtel</i>	'little'	<i>lāssa</i>	<i>lāst</i>

34. The following have only comparative and superlative forms, the corresponding positives being adverbs:

(<i>ār</i>	'formerly')	<i>ārra</i>	<i>ārest</i>
(<i>feorr</i>	'far')	<i>fierra</i>	<i>fierrest</i>
(<i>fore</i>	'before')		<i>forma, fyrimest,</i> <i>fyr(e)st</i>
(<i>nēah</i>	'near')	<i>nēarra</i>	<i>nēhst</i>
(<i>ūte</i>	'outside')	<i>ūterra</i>	<i>ūt(e)mest</i>
		<i>ŷterra</i>	<i>ŷt(e)mest</i>

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

35. The regular comparative is formed by adding *-or*, the superlative by adding *-ost*, instead of the usual positive ending *-e*: *swīpe* 'greatly', *swīpor*, *swīpost*; *bliþelicr* 'joyfully', *bliþelicor*, *bliþelicost*.

36. A few adverbs have mutated vowels in comparative and superlative, and *-est* as the superlative ending. These have no ending at all in the comparative: *lange* 'long', *leng*, *lengest*.

37. The following, like the corresponding adjectives, form comparative and superlative from roots different from those of the positive:

wel	'well'	bet	bet(e)st
		sēl	sēlest
yfle	'badly'	wiers	wier(re)st
micle	'much'	mā	māest
lýt	'little'	lās	lāst

NUMERALS

	<i>Cardinal</i>		<i>Ordinal</i>
ān	'one'	forma	'first'
twā		ōþer	
þrēo		þridda	
fēower		fēorþa	
fif		fifta	
siex		siexta	
seofon		seofoþa	
eahta		eahtoþa	
nigon		nigoþa	
tien		tēoþa	
en(d)leofon		en(d)leofta	
twelf		twelfta	
þrēo-tiene	'thirteen'	þrēo-tēoþa	

and so on to

<i>Cardinal</i>	<i>Ordinal</i>
nigon-tiene 'nineteen'	nigon-tēoþa
twen-tiȝ 'twenty'	twentigoþa
þri-tiȝ 'thirty'	þritigoþa
fēower-tiȝ 'forty'	fēowertigoþa
fif-tiȝ 'fifty'	fiftigoþa
siex-tiȝ 'sixty'	siextigoþa
hund-sefon-tiȝ 'seventy'	
hund-eahta-tiȝ 'eighty'	
hund-nigon-tiȝ 'ninety'	
hund, hundred,	
hund-tēon-tiȝ 'hundred'	
hund-endlefon-tiȝ 'a hundred and ten'	
hund-twelf-tiȝ 'a hundred and twenty'	
þūsend 'thousand'	

39. *An* is declined like other adjectives. Weak forms are generally used in the sense 'alone'.

<i>Twā:</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
<i>NA.</i>	twēȝen	twā, tū	twā
<i>all genders</i>			
<i>G.</i>		twēȝra, twēȝ(e)a	
<i>D.</i>		twām	

So also *bēȝen* 'both': *bā*, *bēȝra*, *bām*.

<i>Prēo:</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
<i>NA.</i>	þrīe	þrēo	þrēo
<i>all genders</i>			
<i>G.</i>		þrēora	
<i>D.</i>		þrim	

40. The numerals from *fēower* to *nigontiene* are generally undeclined. When used without a noun they sometimes take the following endings: nom. -e; gen. -a; dat. -um: *fif-e*, *fif-a*, *fif-um*. Those in -tiȝ are sometimes declined like neuter nouns,

sometimes like adjectives, but are often left undeclined. When not used as adjectives they govern the genitive. *Hund* and *pūsend* are either declined as neuter *nθuns* or left undeclined, and always take the genitive: *eahta hund mila* 'eight hundred miles', *fēower pūsend wera* 'four thousand men'.

In numbers made up of tens and units, the units always precede: *ān and twentīg* 'twenty-one'.

41. Ordinals are always declined 'weak', except *ōper* which is always strong. 'A certain number and a half' is expressed by the ordinal of the number next above, with *healf*: *pridde healf* 'two and a half' ('two complete and the third a half'); *fēorpe healf hund* 'three hundred and fifty'.

PRONOUNS

Personal

42.

First Person

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Dual</i>	<i>Pl.</i>
<i>N.</i>	icē	wit *	wē
<i>A.</i>	mē	unc	ūs
<i>G.</i>	mīn	uncer	ūre
<i>D.</i>	mē	unc	ūs

43.

Second Person

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Dual</i>	<i>Pl.</i>
<i>N.</i>	þū	git	ȝē
<i>A.</i>	þē	inc	ēow
<i>G.</i>	þīn	incer	ēower
<i>D.</i>	þē	inc	ēow

44.

Third Person

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Pl.</i>	<i>All genders</i>
<i>N.</i>	hē	hit	hēo	hēo	hē	hē
<i>A.</i>	hine	hit	hīe	hīe	hīe	hīe
<i>G.</i>	his	his	hi(e)re	hi(e)re	hi(e)ra	hi(e)ra
<i>D.</i>	him	him	hi(e)re	hi(e)re	him	him

45. There are no special reflexive pronouns. The ordinary personal pronouns are used instead: *hīe ġe-samnodon hīe* ‘they collected themselves, assembled’; *hīe ā-bādon him wif* ‘they asked for wives for themselves’. *Self* is used as an emphatic reflexive adjective. Sometimes it agrees with an associated pronoun: *swā swā hīe wyscton him selfum* ‘as they wished for themselves’; but sometimes with the subject, the pronoun being in the dative (‘of interest’): *God fore-scēawap him self pā offrunge* ‘God himself will provide the offering (for himself)’.

Possessive

46. *Mīn, þīn, ûre, ēower*, and the duals *uncer* and *incer* are declined like other adjectives, but do not take weak forms. The genitives *his*, *hiere*, *hiera* are used as indeclinable possessives.

47. Demonstrative and Definite Article

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Pl.</i>	
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>All genders</i>
<i>N.</i>	sě	þæt	sēo	þā
<i>A.</i>	þone	þæt	þā	þā
<i>G.</i>	þæs	þæs	þāre	þāra
<i>D.</i>	þām	þām	þāre	þām
<i>I.</i>	þý	þý, þon	(þāre)	

This pronoun is most commonly used as a definite article. It is sometimes used as a personal pronoun: *hē ġe-hīerp mīn word, and þā wyrcþ* ‘he hears my words, and does them’. *Sē* as a demonstrative and personal pronoun has its vowel long.

48. Demonstrative ‘this’

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Pl.</i>	
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>All genders</i>
<i>N.</i>	þes	þis	þeos	þās
<i>A.</i>	þisne	þis	þās	þās
<i>G.</i>	þisses	þisses	þisse	þissa
<i>D.</i>	þissum	þissum	þisse	þissum
<i>I.</i>	þys	þys	(þisse)	

49.

Interrogative

	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	hwā	hwæt
<i>A.</i>	hwone	hwæt
<i>G.</i>	hwæs	hwæs
<i>D.</i>	hwæm	hwæm
<i>I.</i>		hwȳ, hwon

Hwelc ‘which’ is declined like a strong adjective. It is used both as a pronoun and as an adjective.

Relative

50. There is no separate relative pronoun. The commonest relative is the particle *þe*, which is indeclinable and serves for all genders and numbers: *ālc þāra þe þās mīn word ge-hīerþ* ‘everyone who hears these words of mine’. It is often combined with *sē*, which is declined: *sē þe* ‘who’ masc., *sēo þe* fem., &c. *Sē* alone is also used as a relative: *hīe þā hīne ā-wurpon intō ānum sēape, on þām wāron seofon+lēon* ‘they then threw him into a pit, in which were seven lions’. It sometimes has the sense of ‘he who’, ‘that which’: *hēr þū hæfst þæt þīn is* ‘here thou hast that which is thine’.

Indefinite

51. The interrogatives *hwā*, *hwelc*, &c., are used also in the sense of ‘any(one), any(thing)’. They are combined with *swā* to mean ‘whoever, whatever’: *swā hwā swā, swā hwæt swā, swā hwelc swā*. *Ān* and *sum* are sometimes used indefinitely: *ān mann, sum mann* ‘a certain man’, hence simply ‘a man’. But the indefinite article is more often not expressed. See further § 90.

Man, a form of *mann*, is often used in the indefinite sense of ‘one’ (French *on*, German *man*): *his brōpor Horsan man of slōg* ‘they killed his brother Horsa’, ‘his brother H. was killed’.

Ālc ‘each’, *āniġ* ‘any’, *nāniġ* ‘no, none’ are declined like adjectives. They are used both as pronouns and as adjectives.

The addition of the prefix *ge-* changes the sense of some indefinites from 'any' to 'every': *hwā* 'anyone', *ge·hwā* 'everyone'. A frequent idiom is *ānra ge·hwelc* 'everyone'.

VERBS

52. There are two main classes of verbs, called 'strong' and 'weak'. The difference between them lies principally in the formation of the preterite tense. That of strong verbs is made by changing the vowel of the root syllable according to fixed series ('vowel-gradation', § 6 (7)); that of weak verbs by adding to the root syllable a suffix containing *d* (-*ede*, -*ode*, -*de*), sometimes changed to *t* by assimilation to the preceding consonant.

53. Only two tenses are distinguished in form, present and preterite. There is no formal passive, except in the one form, surviving from an older stage of the language, *hätte* from *hātan* 'call, name', which is both present ('is called') and preterite ('was called'): *se munuc hätte Abbo* 'the monk's name was Abbo'. Persons are distinguished only in the singular of the present and preterite indicative.

54. The present and past participles may be declined like adjectives. The past participle generally prefixes *ge-*, as in *ge·bunden* 'bound', *ge·numen* 'taken', unless the other parts of the verb have the prefix already: *ge·hīran* 'hear', *ge·hīred*. No *ge-* is added if the verb has another prefix, such as *ā-*, *be-*, *for-*: *for·giefan* 'grant', *for·giesen*.

Strong

55. The following is the complete conjugation of a typical strong verb, *bindan* 'bind':

	<i>Indicative</i>	<i>Subjunctive</i>
<i>Pres. sing.</i>		
1.	bind-e	bind-e
2.	bind-est, bintst	bind-e
3.	bind-eþ, bint	bind-e
<i>pl.</i>	bind-ap	bind-en

	<i>Indicative</i>	<i>Subjunctive</i>
<i>Pret. sing.</i>		
1.	band	bund-e
2.	bund-e	bund-e
3.	band	bund-e
<i>pl.</i>	bund-on	bund-en

Imperative sing. bind; *pl.* bind-aþ. *Infinitive* bind-an; *inflected infin.* tō bind-enne. *Participle pres.* bind-ende; *past* ge·bunden.

56. When a pronoun subject immediately follows the verb, the endings -on, -en, and -aþ of 1 and 2 persons pl. pret. indic., pres. and pret. subj., and pres. indic. and imper., are often replaced by -e: wē bindaþ ‘we bind’, but bïnde wē ‘let us bind’, ‘do we bind?'; gāþ! ‘go!', but gā gē! ‘go ye!'

57. The full endings of 2 and 3 sing. pres. indic. are -est and -eþ. These are generally contracted ('syncopated'), and the consonants which thus fall together change as follows:

-test, -teþ	<i>become</i>	-tst, -tt:	lætst, lætt from lætan ‘let’
-dest, -deþ	,	-tst, -tt:	bītst, bītt „ bīdan ‘wait’
-ddest, -ddeþ	,	-tst, -tt:	bītst, bītt „ biddan ‘pray’
-þest, -þeþ	,	-(þ)st, -þþ:	cwi(þ)st, cwiþþ from cweþan ‘say’
-sest, -seþ	,	-st, -st:	cīest, cīest from cēosan ‘choose’
-ndest, -ndeþ	,	-ntst, -nt:	bintst, bint „ bindan ‘bind’

g often becomes h, as flēhþ from flēogan ‘fly’.

Double consonants become single before the endings, as fieldst, fielþ from feallan ‘fall’.

Double final consonants are often simplified: læt, bīt, cwiþ.

58. When the 2 and 3 sing. are contracted in this way the root vowel is mutated, according to the series set out in § 6 (5). (The vowels ī, ð, ē are not subject to mutation.)

59. In the pret. indic. the pl. generally has a different vowel from the sing.: ic band, but wē bundon. The 2 sing. pret. indic.

and the whole of the pret. subj. have the vowel of the pret. plural indic.: *bū bunde, wē bunden*.

60. Some ‘contracted’ verbs, such as *sēon* ‘see’, have *h* in certain forms, but have lost it in those parts in which it came between two vowels (§ 7 (1)): *ič sēo, wē sēop, tō sēonne*. It remains in 2 and 3 sing. pres. indic.: *si(e)hst, si(e)hp*; imper. sing.: *seoh*; pret. sing.: *seah*.

61. There are seven conjugations or ‘classes’ of strong verbs, distinguished mainly by the different formation of their preterites. A few verbs, though having a strong preterite, form their present according to the first weak class (§ 70).

The following lists include all the strong verbs that occur in the texts in this book, together with several others of the commoner ones. They give the four ‘principal parts’, which enable the conjugation to be completed, and also the 3 sing. pres. irdic.

Class I—‘Drive’ conjugation

62. Vowel series: pres. *i*, pret. sing. *ā*, pl. *i*, past part. *i*.

<i>Infin.</i>	<i>3 pres.</i>	<i>Pret. sing.</i>	<i>Pret. pl.</i>	<i>Past part.</i>
<i>bīdan</i> ‘wait’	<i>bītt</i>	<i>bād</i>	<i>bidon</i>	<i>biden</i>
<i>bītan</i> ‘bite’	<i>bītt</i>	<i>bāt</i>	<i>biton</i>	<i>biten</i>
<i>drīfan</i> ‘drive’	<i>drīfþ</i>	<i>drāf</i>	<i>drifon</i>	<i>drif'en</i>
<i>hrīnan</i> ‘touch’	<i>hrīnþ</i>	<i>hrān</i>	<i>hrinon</i>	<i>hrinen</i>
<i>mīþan</i> ‘hide’	<i>mīþþ</i>	<i>māþ</i>	<i>mīþon</i>	<i>mīþen</i>
<i>rīpan</i> ‘reap’	<i>rīþþ</i>	<i>rāp</i>	<i>ripon</i>	<i>ripen</i>
(<i>ā</i>) <i>rīsan</i> ‘rise’	- <i>rīst</i>	- <i>rās</i>	- <i>rison</i>	- <i>risen</i>
<i>snīþan</i> ‘cut’	<i>snīþþ</i>	<i>snāþ</i>	<i>snidon</i>	<i>sniden</i>
<i>stīgan</i> ‘ascend’	<i>stīgþ</i>	<i>stāg</i>	<i>stigon</i>	<i>stigen</i>
(<i>be</i>) <i>swīcan</i> ‘deceive’	- <i>swīcb</i>	- <i>swāc</i>	- <i>swicon</i>	- <i>swicen</i>

Like *bīdan* are *gnīdan* ‘rub’, *rīdan* ‘ride’.

Like *bītan* are *slītan* ‘tear’, *gē-wītan* ‘depart’, *wrītan* ‘write’.

Like *drīfan* is (*be*)*līfan* ‘remain’.

Like *hrīnan* is *scīnan* ‘shine’.

Like -*swīcan* is *snīcan* ‘creep’.

Infin. *3 pres.* *Pret. sing.* *Pret. pl.* *Past part.*

Contracted:

þēon 'prosper' þiehþ þāh ' þigon þigen

Class II—'Choose' conjugation

63. Vowel series: pres. *ēo* and *ū*, pret. sing. *ēa*, pl. *u*, past part. *o*.

bēodan 'offer'	bīett	bēad.	budon	boden
brēotan 'break'	briett	brēat	bruton	broten
cēosan 'choose'	cīest	cēas	curon	coren
fleogan 'fly'	fliehþ	flēag	flugon	flogen
hrēowan 'rue'	hrīewþ	hrēaw	hruwon	hrowen
sēoþan 'boil'	siehþ	sēaþ	sudon	soden
smēocan 'smoke'	smīecþ	smēac	smucon	smocen

Like *brēotan* are *fleōtan* 'float', *scēotan* 'shoot'.

Like *cēosan* are *hrēosan* 'fall', (*for*)*lēosan* 'lose'.

ū-presents:

brūcan 'enjoy'	brycþ	brēac	brucon	brocen
būgan 'bow'	bŷhp	bēag	bugon	bogen
lūtan 'bow'	lýtt	lēat	luton	loten
scūfan 'push'	scýfþ	scēaf	scufon	scofen

Like *brūcan* is *lūcan* 'lock'.

Contracted:

flēon 'flee'	fliehþ	flēah	flugon	flogen
tēon 'draw'	tīchþ	tēah	tugon	togen

Class III—'Bind' conjugation

64. The vowel of the infinitive is followed by two consonants, of which the first is nearly always a nasal (*m*, *n*) or a liquid (*l*, *r*). The vowel series depends on this consonant (§ 6 (1, 3)).

(a) before nasal+cons., pres. *i*, pret. sing. *a*, pl. *u*, past part. *u*.

bindan 'bind'	bint	band	bundon	bunden
drincan 'drink'	drincþ	dranc	druncon	druncen

<i>Infin.</i>	<i>3 pres.</i>	<i>Pret. sing.</i>	<i>Pret. pl.</i>	<i>Past part.</i>
findan 'find'	fint	funde, fundon		funden
		fand		
(on)ginnan 'begin'	-ginþ	-gann	-gunnon	-gunnen
ge-limpan 'happen'	-limpþ	-lamp	-lumpon	-lumpen
springan 'spring'	springþ	sprang	sprungon	sprung'en
swimman 'swim'	swimþ	swamm	swummon	swummen
winnan 'fight'	winþ	wann	wunnon	wunnen

Like *bindan* are *grindan* 'grind', *windan* 'wind'.

Like *drincan* are *scrincan* 'shrink', *swincan* 'toil'.

Like *springan* are *swingan* 'beat', *wringan* 'wring'.

(b) before *l*+cons., pres. *e* (*ie*, § 6 (4)), pret. sing. *ea*, pl. *u*, past part. *o*.

delfan 'dig'	dilfþ	dealf	dulfon	dolfen
ȝieldan 'pay'	ȝielt	ȝeald	guldon	golden
helpan 'help'	hilþ	healp	hulpon	holpen
sweltan 'die'	swilt	swealt	swulton	swolten

(c) before *r*+cons. (also *h*+cons.), pres. *eo*, pret. sing. *ea*, pl. *u*, past part. *o*.

beorgan 'protect'	bierhþ	bearg	burgon	borgen
ceorfan 'cut'	ci erfþ	cearf	curfon	corfen
feohtan 'fight'	fieht	feaht	fuhton	fohten
weorpan 'throw'	wierpþ	wearp	wurpon	worpen
weorþan 'become'	wierþ	wearþ	wurdon	worden

Two verbs of this form have the vowel series of (a), to which they belonged before metathesis of *r*:

bi(e)rnan 'burn'	bi(e)rnþ	barn	burnon	burnen
i(e)rnan 'run'	i(e)rnþ	arn	urnon	urnen

Exceptional are:

berstan 'burst'	bi(e)rst	bærst	burston	borsten
bregðan 'pull'	[britt] ¹	brægd	brugdon	brogden
frígnan 'ask'	[frinþ]	frægn	frugnon	frugnen
murnan 'mourn'	myrnþ	mearn	murnon	

¹ [] indicates that no regular forms are recorded.

Class IV—‘Bear’ conjugation

65. The vowel of the infinitive is followed by a single consonant, nearly always a liquid or nasal: in *brecan* the liquid precedes.

Vowel series: pres. *e* (*i* before *m*), pret. sing. *æ* (*a*), pl. *ǣ* (*ō*), past part. *o* (*u*). *Cuman* is irregular.

<i>Infin.</i>	<i>3 pres.</i>	<i>Pret. sing.</i>	<i>Pret. pl.</i>	<i>Past part.</i>
beran ‘bear’	bi(e)rþ	bær	bāron	boren
brecan ‘break’	bricþ	bræc	brācon	brocen
scieran ‘cut’ (§ 6 (4))	scierþ	scear	scēaron	scoren
stelan ‘steal’	stilþ	stæl	stælon	stolen

Like *beran* is *teran* ‘tear’.

niman ‘take’	nimþ	nōm, nam	nōmon, nāmon	numen
cuman ‘come’	cymþ	cōm	cōmon	cumen

Class V—‘Give’ conjugation

66. The vowel of the infinitive is followed by a single consonant not a liquid or nasal. This class differs from Class IV only in the past part., which has the same vowel as the infin.

Vowel series: pres. *e* (*ie*, § 6 (4)), pret. sing. *æ* (*ea*), pl. *ǣ* (*ēa*), past part. *e* (*ie*).

cweþan ‘say’	cwiþþ	cwæþ	cwādon	cweden
etan ‘eat’	itt	æt	āton	eten
giefan ‘give’	giefþ	geaf	gēafon	giefen
(be)gietan ‘get’	-giett	-geat	-gēaton	-gieten
metan ‘measure’	[met]	mæt	mēton	meten
sprecan ‘speak’	spricþ	spræc	sprācon	sprecen

Like *sprecan* is *wrekan* ‘avenge’.

The following have weak presents, with vowel *i* (a mutation of normal *e*, which appears in past part.) and a doubled consonant. (In imper. sing. they have *bide*, *lige*, *site*, *pige*.)

biddan ‘pray’	bitt	bæd	bādon	beden
licgan ‘lie’	liþ	læg	lāgon	legen

<i>Infin.</i>	<i>3 pres.</i>	<i>Pret. sing.</i>	<i>Pret. pl.</i>	<i>Past part.</i>
sittan 'sit'	sitt	sæt	sæton	seten
þicgan 'receive'	þiȝeþ	þeah	þægon	þegen
Contracted:				
sēon 'see'	si(e)hb	seah	sāwon	sewen

Class VI—'Shake' conjugation

67. Vowel series: pres. *a*, pret. sing. and pl. *ō*, past part. *a* (*æ*). *Standan* drops its *n* in the pret. The past part. of *swerian* is irregular.

faran 'go'	færþ	fōr	fōron	faren
sacan 'quarrel'	sæcþ	sōc	sōcon	sacen
scacan 'shake'	scæcþ	scōc	scōcon	scacen
standan 'stand'	stent	stōd	stōdon	standen

The following have weak presents, with vowel *e* (a mutation of *æ* from earlier *a*) and a doubled consonant or *-ian*. (Imper. sing. *hefe*, *swere*.)

hebban 'lift'	hefþ	hōf	hōfon	hafen
scieppan 'create'	sciepþ	scōp	scōpon	scapen
swerian 'swear'	swereþ	swōr	swōron	sworen
Contracted:				
slēan 'strike'	sliehþ	slōg	slōgon	slægen

Class VII—'Fall' conjugation

68. This class is of a different type from the rest. The vowels of the infinitive are various. The preterite singular and plural have the same vowel, either *ēo* or *ē*, and the past participle has the same vowel as the infinitive.

(a) *ēo* in pret.

feallan 'fall'	fielþ	fēoll	fēollon	feallen
healdan 'hold'	hielt	hēold	hēoldon	healden
weaxan 'grow'	wiext	wēox	wēoxon	weaxen
cnāwan 'know'	cnæwþ	cnēow	cnēowon	cnāwen
grōwan 'grow'	grēwþ	grēow	grēowon	grōwen

<i>Infin.</i>	<i>3 pres.</i>	<i>Pret. sing.</i>	<i>Pret. pl.</i>	<i>Past part.</i>
wēpan 'weep'	wēpþ	wēop	wēpon	wōpen
<i>(Wēpan is a weak pres., with mutation, the original ō appearing in the past part.; but the inflexion is not affected.)</i>				
bēatan 'beat'	bīett	bēot	bēoton	bēaten
hēawan 'hew'	hīewþ	hēow	hēowon	hēawen
hlēapan 'leap'	hlīepþ	hlēop	hlēpon	hlēapen

Like *feallan* is *weallan* 'boil'.

Like *healdan* is *wealdan* 'rule'.

Like *cnāwan* are *blāwan* 'blow', *māwan* 'mow', *sāwan* 'sow'.

Like *grōwan* are *flōwan* 'flow', *rōwan* 'row', *spōwan* 'succeed'.

Gangan 'go' belongs to this class, but its preterite does not appear in prose.

(b) ē in pret.

hātan 'call'	hātt	hēt	hēton	hāten
(on)drādan 'fear'	-drātt	-drēd	-drēdon	-drāden
lātan 'let'	lātt	lēt	lēton	lāten
slāpan 'sleep'	slāpþ	slēp	slēpon	slāpen

Contracted:

fōn 'seize'	fēhþ	fēng	fēngon	fangen
hōn 'hang'	hēhþ	hēng	hēngon	hangen

Weak

69. There are three classes of weak verbs: (1) infin. ending -an (-ian after r), pret. sing. -(e)de; (2) infin. -ian, pret. sing. -ode; (3) the group *habban* 'have', *libban* 'live', *secgan* 'say', *hycgan* 'think'.

Class I

70. Nearly all verbs of this class have a mutated vowel in the present. They are subdivided into:

(a) verbs with short vowel followed by doubled consonant or by r: *fremman* 'perform', *werian* 'defend'; pret. -ede, past

part. -ed: *fremede, fremed*. The double consonant of the infinitive appears only in pres. indic. 1 sing. and pl., pres. subj., imper. pl., and pres. part.; and the *i* of verbs like *werian* is confined to these same parts.

(b) verbs with long vowel, or with short vowel followed by two consonants: *hieran* 'hear', *sendan* 'send'; pret. -de, past part. -(e)d: *hierde, hiered*. Some have double consonants, and can be distinguished from (a) only historically; they descend from forms with *original* double consonants, as may be seen by comparing related words, e.g. *fyllan* 'fill', *full* 'full'. Double consonants are simplified in pret. and past part.: *sende, send*; *fylde*. After *p, s, t, d* becomes *-t*: *dyppe* from *dyppan* 'dip', *mëtte* from *mëtan* 'meet'; and *-sst* becomes *-st*: *cyste* from *cyssan* 'kiss'. Similarly *-cde* becomes *-hte*: *tæhte* from *tæcan* 'teach'. The past part. is generally contracted: *send, mëtt, tæht*; but uncontracted forms are common in some verbs: *fylled, dypped*. When declined like adjectives past participles are contracted before endings beginning with a vowel: *hiered, hieredne*, but *hierde*.

The 2 and 3 sing. pres. indic. of (b), and often of (a)—but not *fremman* or the -rian verbs—are contracted as in strong verbs. Verbs with double consonant (including cg) simplify it in these forms, and also in imper. sing.: *sellan* 'give', *selst, selþ; sele*.

71.

(a)

(b)

	<i>fremman</i>	<i>werian</i>	<i>nieran</i>
<i>Present</i>			
<i>Indic. sing. 1.</i>	frem-me	wer-i(g)e	hier-e
2.	frem-est	wer-est	hierst
3.	frem-eþ	wer-eþ	hierþ
<i>pl.</i>	frem-maþ	wer-i-aþ	hier-aþ
<i>Subj. sing.</i>	frem-me	wer-i(g)e	hier-e
<i>pl.</i>	frem-men	wer-i-en	hier-en

	(a)	(b)
	<i>fremman</i>	<i>werian</i>
		<i>hieran</i>
<i>Indic. sing.</i>		<i>Preterite</i>
1.	frem-edē	wer-edē
2.	frem-edest	wer-edest
3.	frem-edē	wer-edē
<i>pl.</i>	frem-edon	wer-edon
<i>Subj. sing.</i>	frem-edē	wer-edē
<i>pl.</i>	frem-eden	wer-eden
<i>Imper. sing.</i>	frem-e	wer-e
<i>pl.</i>	frem-maþ	wer-iap
<i>Infl. infin.</i>	(tō) frem-menne	wer-iinne
<i>Part. pres.</i>	frem-mende	wer-iende
<i>past</i>	frem-ed	wer-ed

Other verbs of this class are:

<i>Infin.</i>	<i>3 pres.</i>	<i>Pret. sing.</i>	<i>Past part.</i>
(a)			
trymman 'strengthen'	trymeþ	trymede	trymed
settan 'set'	sett	sette	sett
lecan 'lay'	legþ	legde	legd

Like *werian* are nearly all in *-ian* after *r*, e.g. *ferian* 'carry', *herian* 'praise', *nerian* 'save', *ge-byrian* 'befit'. (*And-swarian* 'answer' follows § 73.)

(b)			
(æ)t̄iewan 'show'	-iewþ	-iewde	-iewed
(â)liesan 'release'	-liest	-liesde	-liesed
byrgan 'bury'	byrȝeþ	byr(i)ȝde	byrged
cȳþan 'make known'	cȳþþ	cȳþde, cȳdde	cȳþed, cȳdd
dēman 'judge'	dēmþ	dēmde	dēmed
fyllan 'fill'	fylþ	fylde	fylled
gierwan 'prepare'	giereþ	gierede	gier(w)ed
(ge-ān-)læccan 'unite'	-læcþ	-læhte	-læht
læccan 'seize'	læcþ	læhte	læht
(ge)liefan 'believe'	-liefþ	-liefde	-liefed

<i>Infin.</i>	<i>3 pres.</i>	<i>Pret. sing.</i>	<i>Past part.</i>
nemnan 'name'	nemneþ	nemde	nemned
ræcan 'reach'	ræcþ	ræhte	ræht
sendan 'send'	sent	sende	send
tæcan 'teach'	tæcþ	tæhte	tæht
wendan 'turn'	went	wende	wend

72. A number of verbs of this class which have *-c(c)*, *-cg*, *-g*, or *-ll* at the end of the root syllable form irregular preterites. The root-vowel is mutated in the present but not in the preterite. Some vowels in the preterite are affected by the sound-change described in § 6 (3), and some by the loss before *h* of *n* which appears in the present.

reccan 'tell'	recþ	reahte	reaht
cwellan 'kill'	cwelp	cwealde	cweald
þençan 'think'	þencþ	þohte	þoht
bringan 'bring'	bringþ	'brōhte	brōht
bycgan 'buy'	bygþ	bohte	boht
wyrçan 'make'	wyrcþ	worhte	worht
þynçan 'seem'	þyncþ	þūhte	þūht
reccan 'care'	recþ	rōhte	rōht
sēcan 'seek'	sēcþ	sōhte	sōht

Like *reccan* 'tell' are (*ā*)*streccan* 'stretch', *weccan* 'wake'

Like *cwellan* are *sellan* 'give', *tellan* 'count'.

Class II

73. The infinitive always ends in *-ian*, and nearly all verbs with *-ian* infin. after consonants other than *r* belong here. The pret. ends in *-ode*, past part. *-od*. The characteristic vowel of 2 and 3 sing. pres. indic. is *a*, which appears also in imper. sing. So *lufian* 'love':

	<i>Present</i>	<i>Preterite</i>
<i>Indic. sing. 1.</i>	<i>luf-i(g)e</i>	<i>luf-ode</i>
<i>2.</i>	<i>luf-ast</i>	<i>luf-odest</i>
<i>3.</i>	<i>luf-ap</i>	<i>luf-ode</i>

	<i>Present</i>	<i>Preterite</i>
<i>Indic. pl.</i>	luf-iap	luf-odon
<i>Subj. sing.</i>	luf-i(g)e	luf-ode
<i>pl.</i>	luf-iēn	luf-oden

Imper. sing. luf-a, *pl.* luf-iap. *Infl. infin.* tō luf-ienne. *Part. pres.* luf-iende, *past* luf-od.

So also: *andswarian* ‘answer’, *āscian* ‘ask’, *blissian* ‘rejoice’, *clipian* ‘call’, *eardian* ‘dwell’, *endian* ‘end’, *fandian* ‘try’, *gadian* ‘gather’, *hergian* ‘ravage’, *leornian* ‘learn’, *losian* ‘be lost’, *macian* ‘make’, *scēawian* ‘look at’, *timbrian* ‘build’, *weorpiān* ‘honour’, *wunian* ‘dwell’, and many others. *Smēagan* ‘consider’ is contracted in most forms; it has pret. *smēade*.

Class III

74. This class is practically limited to the four verbs *habban* ‘have’, *libban* ‘live’, *secgan* ‘say’, *hycgan* ‘think’. The forms are partly like those of Class I, partly like Class II.

<i>Pres. indic. sing.</i>	1. hæbbe	libbe	secge	hycge
	2. hæfst	leofast	sægst	hogast
	3. hæfþ	leofaþ	sægþ	hogaþ
<i>pl.</i>	habbaþ	libbaþ	secgaþ	hycgaþ
<i>subj. sing.</i>	hæbbe	libbe	secge	hycge
<i>Pret. sing.</i>	hæfde	lifde,	sægde	hogode
		leofode		
<i>Imper. sing.</i>	hafa	leofa	sægē	hygē, hogā
<i>pl.</i>	habbaþ	libbaþ	secgaþ	hycgaþ
<i>Part. pres.</i>	hæbbende	libbende,	secgende	hycgende
		lifiende		
<i>past</i>	hæfd	lifd,	sægd	hogod
		leofod		

Originally of this class is *fetian* ‘fetch’, pret. *fette*.

Preterite-present Verbs

75. These are a small group of common verbs, largely auxiliaries, which in the present have the form of a strong

preterite. (They are old strong preterites with modified meaning.) They differ in inflexion from ordinary strong verbs in 2 sing., where the ending is *-t*, sometimes *-st*, not *-e*. Their preterite tenses are new weak formations, conjugated like other weak preterites. Few of these verbs are recorded in all forms.

76. *witan* 'know':

	<i>Present</i>	<i>Preterite</i>
<i>Indic. sing.</i>	1. wāt	wisse, wiste
	2. wāst	wisest, wistest
	3. wāt	wisse, wiste
<i>pl.</i>	witon	wisson, wiston
<i>Subj. sing.</i>	wite	wisse, wiste

Imper. sing. wite, *pl.* witap. *Part. pres.* witende, *past* witen.

The contracted negative *nāt* has 2 sing. nāst, *pl.* nyton; *subj.* nyte; *pret.* nysse, nyste.

77. The following are the most important of the others:

<i>Infin.</i>	āgan 'own'	cunnan 'know'	dugan 'avail'
<i>Pres. sing. 1, 3.</i>	āh	cann	dēah
	2. āhst	canst	
<i>pl.</i>	āgon	cunnon	dugon
<i>subj.</i>	āge	cunne	dyge, duge
<i>Pret.</i>	āhte	cūþe	dohte
<i>Past part.</i>	āgen (<i>only</i> <i>as adj.</i>)	cūþ (<i>only</i> <i>as adj.</i>)	

Āgan has contracted neg. nāh, &c. Like cunnan is unnan 'grant'.

<i>Infin.</i>		(ge)munan	
	'dare'	'remember'	'be able'
<i>Pres. sing. 1, 3.</i>	dearr	-man	mæg
	2. dearst	-manst	meahht, miht
<i>pl.</i>	durron	-munon	magon
<i>subj.</i>	durre	-myne, -mune	mægē
<i>Pret.</i>	dorste	-munde	meahte, mihte
<i>Past part.</i>		-munen	

	'may'	'be obliged'	'need'
<i>Pres. sing.</i> 1, 3.	mōt	sceal	þearf
2.	mōst	sceaſt	þearft
<i>pl.</i>	mōton	sculon	þurfon
<i>subj.</i>	mōte	scytle, scule	þyrfe, þurfe
<i>Pret.</i>	mōſte	scolde	þorſte

Anomalous Verbs

78. *wesan, bēon* 'be' :

	<i>Present</i>		<i>Preterite</i>
<i>Indic. sing.</i> 1.	eom	bēo	wæs
2.	eart	bist	wāre
3.	is	biþ	wæs
<i>pl.</i>	sind,	bēoþ	wāron
	sindon		
<i>Subj. sing.</i>	sīe	bēo	wāre
<i>pl.</i>	sīen	bēon	wāren

Imper. sing. wes, bēo; *pl.* wesāþ, bēoþ. *Part. pres.* wesende. The contracted negative forms are: neom, neart, nis; næs, nāre, nāron; nāre, nāren.

79. *willan* 'will' and its neg. *nyllan* have some mixture of subj. forms in pres. indic. sing.:

<i>Pres. indic. sing.</i> 1.	wille	nylle
2.	wilt	nylt
3.	wil(l)e	nyl(l)e
<i>pl.</i>	willaþ	nyllaþ
<i>subj. sing.</i>	wil(l)e	nyl(l)e
<i>pl.</i>	willen	nyllen
<i>Pret. sing.</i>	wolde	nolde

80. *dōn* 'do', *gān* 'go':

<i>Pres. indic. sing.</i> 1.	dō	gā
2.	dēſt	gāſt
3.	dēþ	gāþ
<i>pl.</i>	dōþ	gāþ

<i>Pres. subj. sing.</i>	dō	gā
<i>pl.</i>	dōn	gān
<i>Pret. sing.</i>	dyde	ēode
<i>Imper. sing.</i>	dō	gā
<i>pl.</i>	dōþ	gāþ
<i>Part. pres.</i>	dōnde	(gangende)
<i>past</i>	ge·dōn	ge·gān (gangen)

The participles *gangende*, *gangen* belong to *gangan*, a strong verb of Class VII, the preterite of which is not used in prose.

WORD FORMATION

PREFIXES

81. Some prefixes are only particular applications of prepositions or adverbs, and modify in a simple and direct way the meanings of the words with which they are combined. Thus *fore* ‘before’ combines with *scēawian* ‘look at’ to form *fore·scēawian* ‘foresee’; *tō* ‘to’ with *cyme* ‘coming’ to form *tō·cyme* ‘arrival, advent’. But others exist only as prefixes. The most important of these are included in the following list.

ā- (1) originally ‘forth, away’, as in *ā·risan* ‘rise up’, *ā·faran* ‘go away’; but generally reduced to an intensive, as *ā·cwellan* ‘kill’, *ā·hrēosan* ‘fall’.

(2) ‘ever’, gives an indefinite sense to pronouns and adverbs such as *ā·wiht* ‘anything’, *ā·hwær* ‘anywhere’.

ǣg-, from *ā·ge* (with mutation of the *ā* by earlier -gi) gives a similar indefinite sense: *ǣg·hwelc* ‘each’, *ǣgþer* = *ǣg·hwæþer* ‘either’.

be-, originally ‘about’, the same as the preposition, (1) retains this sense in a few words, e.g. *be·settan* ‘surround’, and has a related local implication in *be·foran* ‘before’, &c.; (2) makes an intransitive verb transitive, as *be·penčan* ‘consider’ from *penčan* ‘think’; (3) gives a privative sense, as *be·hēafđian* ‘behead’. In many words it is simply intensive, as *be·lūcan* ‘lock’, and in some almost meaningless, as *be·cuman* ‘come’.

It has a stressed form *bī*, used in nouns such as *bī-geng* ‘worship’.

for- in a few words is identical with the preposition *for* ‘before’, as *for·standan* ‘defend’. But in most cases it is of completely different origin, and most commonly gives the sense of loss or destruction, as *for·dōn* ‘destroy’, *for·weorþan* ‘perish’. If the verb with which it is compounded already has some such meaning, it acts merely as an ‘intensive’, as *for·dīlgian* ‘destroy’. It often modifies in a bad sense generally, as *for·sēon* ‘despise’, or implies prohibition, as *for·bēdan* ‘forbid’.

ge- originally meant ‘together’, as in *ge·fēra* ‘fellow-traveller, companion’ from *fēran* ‘travel’, or *ge·sweostor* ‘sisters’. With verbs its most distinctive function is to signify the attainment of a result by means of the action denoted by the verb: *ge·gān* ‘conquer’ (‘get by going’) from *gān* ‘go’; *ge·winnan* ‘win’ (‘get by fighting’) from *winnan* ‘fight’. It also signifies the completion of an action, or the performance of a particular single act as distinguished from the general sense of the uncompounded verb; so that *ge·hīeran* and *ge·sēon* mean strictly ‘succeed in hearing, seeing’. But, since these verbs very commonly express particular actions, the compounded forms are much used, and come to be extended far beyond their real function. In many verbs the distinction has been altogether lost, so that, e.g., *bindan* and *ge·bindan* are used indifferently. The prefix is generally used in past participles, where it originally gave the sense of completion. It also appears in some nouns denoting the result of an action: *ge·weorc* ‘(military) work’, *ge·writ* ‘letter’. Sometimes it gives a causative sense to a verb, as *ge·ān-læcān* ‘unite’; sometimes modifies the sense in a particular way, as *ge·faran* ‘die’ from *faran* ‘go’. With pronouns and adverbs it gives an inclusive sense: *ge·hwā* ‘everyone’ from *hwā* ‘anyone’, *ge·hwār* ‘everywhere’, &c.; and cf. *æg-* above.

on- as a verbal prefix has three distinct origins and functions: (1) identical with the preposition, as in *on·ginnan* ‘begin’ (with corresponding noun *an·ginn*); (2) originally implying

'against', 'in return', as in *on·gietan* 'perceive' (with corresponding noun *and-giet*); (3) giving the sense of undoing, as *on·lūcan* 'unlock', beside which *in·lūcan* also occurs.

or-, originally 'out', is privative, as *or-sorg* 'unconcerned' from *sorg* 'sorrow', *or-mæte* 'measureless' from the root of *metan* 'measure'.

tō- in a few words is identical with the preposition, as *tō·gædre* 'together'. But as a verbal prefix it is almost always quite distinct, and signifies separation or division, as *tō·berstan* 'burst asunder', *tō·teran* 'tear to pieces'; and so often implies destruction, as *tō·weorpan* 'overthrow'.

un- negatives, as *un·gē·sālig* 'unhappy', *un·mihtiġ* 'weak'. It is sometimes prefixed to nouns, as *un·rīm* 'a countless number'; and in a few nouns it has a pejorative, not a negative, sense: *un·writere* 'bad writer, careless scribe'.

82.

ENDINGS

Nouns

Personal

-end, from the pres. part. *-ende*, = '-er': *ā·līsend* 'redeemer', *būend* 'dweller', *cīepend* 'seller', *hālend* 'healer, Saviour'.

-ere, = '-er': *rīpere* 'reaper', *writere* 'writer'; *mynetere* 'money-changer, minter' from *mynet* 'coin'.

-ing, patronymic: *æbeling* 'son of a noble, prince', *Ecg'bryht-ing* 'son of Ecg'bryht'; also 'belonging or pertaining to', as *wīting* 'pirate' from *wīc* 'camp'.

All these are of masculine gender.

Abstract

-nes, from adjectives and participles: *rihtwīsn̄es* 'righteousness', *welwillendnes* 'benevolence', *gē·recednes* 'narrative'.

-þu (-*oþ*), generally from adjectives: *strengþu* 'strength' from *strang*; *ȝeogþu* 'youth' from the root of *ȝeong*.

-ung, less often **-ing**, from verbs: *hergung* ‘ravaging’ from *hergian*; *sweotolung* ‘sign’ from *sweotolian* ‘show’; *trymmung* ‘strengthening’ from *trymman*.

All the above are feminine. The following exist also as independent words:

-dōm, masc.: *wīs-dōm* ‘wisdom’, *pēow-dōm* ‘service’.

-hād, masc.: *cild-hād* ‘childhood’.

-rāden, fem.: *gē-cwid-rāden* ‘agreement’, *hierd-rāden* ‘guardianship’, *mann-rāden* ‘allegiance’.

-scipe, masc.: *frēond-scope* ‘friendship’; concrete in *wæter-scope* ‘piece of water, water’.

Adjectives

-en, with mutation of the root-vowel, implies ‘made of, belonging to’: *gylden* ‘golden’, *stānen* ‘of stone’, *hāpen* ‘heathen’ from *hāp* ‘heath’. In *seolcen* ‘silk’ there is no mutation.

-ig: *mihtiig* ‘mighty’, *hālig* ‘holy’ from *hāl* ‘whole’.

-isc, with mutation: *Englisc* ‘English’ from *Angel*, *mennisc* ‘human’ from *mann*.

-sum: *hiersum* ‘obedient’, *gē-dwolsum* ‘misleading’.

The following exist also as independent words:

-fæst: *sigē-fæst* ‘victorious’.

-full: *gē-lēaf-full* ‘pious’, *weorp-full* ‘honourable’.

-lēas = ‘-less’: *ār-lēas* ‘dishonoured, impious’.

-lič (in origin the same word as *lič* ‘body, form’; cf. also *gē-lič* ‘like’): *folc-lič* ‘popular’, *heofon-lič* ‘heavenly’; often combined with participles: *unārimed-lič* ‘innumerable’.

-weard = ‘-ward’: *ufe-weard* ‘upward, upper’; often meaning ‘a (specified) part of’: *ealle Cent ēastewearde* ‘the whole of east Kent’ (acc.).

Adverbs

-e is the regular adverb termination: *lange* ‘long’, *gē-liče* ‘similarly’ from *lang*, *gē-lič*. From the frequent combination of

this ending with the adjectival *-lic*, the suffix *-lice* is often used to form adverbs: *blīpe-līce* 'gladly' from *blīpe*.

-unga (-inga) appears in a few words: *eallunga* 'entirely'.

-mālum, originally dat. pl. of *māl* 'measure', gives the sense 'taken in (specified) quantities at a time': *scēaf-mālum* 'sheaf by sheaf' so 'in bundles'; *styccē-mālum* 'piecemeal' from *styccē* 'piece'.

Verbs

-lācān generally forms verbs denoting action of various kinds from nouns or adjectives: *gē·ān-lācān* 'unite', *gē·efen-lācān* 'match', *gē·pwār-lācān* 'consent' from *gē·pwāre* 'agreeing'.

SYNTAX

CONCORD

Adjectives and participles

83. Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case, not only when used attributively (as *gōde menn* 'good men'), but also when the adjective follows the noun, either predicatively or in apposition: *pā menn sind gōde* 'the men are good'; *hē gē·seah ōpre īidle standan* 'he saw others standing idle'; *hīe of·slōgon ānne gēongne Brettiscne mannan, swīpe æpelne* 'they killed a young Briton, of very noble birth'; *ne ā·bȳhp nāfre Eadmund Hinguare, hāpnūm heretogan* 'Edmund will never submit to Hinguar, the heathen general'.

But when a name together with the past participle *gē·hāten* is put in apposition to another noun, both name and participle are left undeclined: *intō ānre byrig, Gaza gē·hāten* 'into a city called Gaza'.

Other participles in predicative use are occasionally left uninflected, or in the nominative, instead of agreeing with nouns they qualify: *Abrahām gē·seah ānne ramm . . . be pām hornum gē·hāft* 'Abraham saw a ram caught by the horns'; *gīf ic bēo*

ge·bunden mid seofon rāpum, of sinum ge·worhte ‘if I am bound with seven ropes made of sinews’.

When both men and women are referred to by the same adjective, it is sometimes put in the neuter: *hīe ge·samnodon hīe, ealle pā hēafodmenn, and ēac swelcē wīfmenn . . . and pā hīe blīpost wāron . . .* ‘they assembled, all the chief men, and also women . . . and when they were most merry . . .’. Here *blīpost* is neut. pl., though both *hēafodmenn* and *wīfmenn* are grammatically masculine. But the passage continues: *pā bādon hīe sume . . .* ‘then some of them asked . . .’, where *sume* is masculine.

Pronouns

84. Pronouns normally have the gender of the word to which they refer: *ič bidde, gif hwā pās bōc ā·wītan wile, pāt hē hīe ge·rihte wel* ‘I beg, if anyone wishes to copy this book, that he correct it well’, where *hīe* is feminine agreeing with *bōc*. Sometimes, however, a masculine or feminine noun denoting an inanimate object is referred to by a neuter pronoun: *pā pā sēo bōc cōm tō ūs, . . . pā ā·wendon wē hit on Englisc* ‘when the book came to us, then we translated it into English’, where *hit* refers to the grammatically fem. *bōc*.

A demonstrative *pāt* or *pīs* is often connected with a plural predicate by the verb ‘to be’. The verb is put in the plural: *pāt wāron pā ā·restan scipu . . .* ‘those were the first ships’.

The neut. *hwāt* is used interrogatively of persons, even when plural, with the sense ‘what manner of’: *hē nyste hwāt hīe wāron* ‘he did not know what sort of men they were’.

CASES

For the use of cases with prepositions see § 96.

Accusative

85. The accusative is primarily the case of the direct object. It is also used with some impersonal verbs, e.g. *ge·weorpan: swā swā hīne selfne ge·wierþ* ‘as he himself pleases’.

It is often used adverbially, especially to express duration of time: *hwȳ stande gē hēr ealne dæg īidle?* ‘Why do you stand here all day idle?'; and extent of space: *twā hund mīla brād* ‘two hundred miles wide' (*twā hund* is acc., *mīla* partitive gen.). In *hām* ‘home(wards)’ it expresses motion towards.

Genitive

86. The genitive usually expresses relations between nouns. The most frequent and important is possession; but it may also define: *on seofon nihta fæce* ‘in the space of a week'; or *Agustes mōnþe* ‘in the month of August'; or describe: *on þām ġēare þe Aelfred æpeling ān and twentiġ ġēara wās* ‘in the year in which Prince Alfred was twenty-one'; *pā betstan meregrotan ālces hīwes* ‘the finest pearls of every colour'.

It is very common in a partitive sense: *hiera fīf* ‘five of them'. It is generally used with *fela*, as *fela wundra* ‘many miracles', and with numerals when used as nouns, as *fiftiġ wintra* ‘fifty years' (§ 40). (But *sum* often agrees with a plural pronoun: *hīe sume* ‘some of them'.)

An ‘objective’ genitive is more frequent than in Mn.E.: *mīn ēge* ‘fear of me'; *on his wīp-metennesse* ‘in comparison with him'.

With verbs, the genitive is often used to denote the object of various emotions and mental states, such as joy, desire, gratitude, concern: *and hīe pās fægnodon* ‘and they rejoiced at that'; *pās ič ġe-wilniġe* ‘that I desire'; *pāciende þām Ælmihtigan ealra his wundra* ‘thanking the Almighty for all his wonders'; *gif hē rōhte his feores* ‘if he cared about his life'. So also with verbs of using, partaking of: *wīp þām þe mīn folc mōste hiera eardes brūcan* ‘provided that my people might enjoy (possess) their country'; *hē ne dorste pās hēafdes on-bierġan* ‘he dared not taste the head'.

Adjectives denoting such feelings also take a genitive complement: *and hīe pās ġe-fægēne wāron* ‘and they were glad of that'; *ġe-myndiġ pāre sōpan lāre* ‘mindful of the true doctrine'. So also do some other adjectives, e.g. *wierpe sleġes* ‘deserving of death'.

Some verbs, such as *biddan* ‘ask', take an accusative of person

and genitive of thing: *ič bidde þe þæt þū mē þæs nā leng ne bidde* ‘I beg you not to ask this of me any longer’.

A different kind of relation, ‘ablative’ in type, is expressed by the genitive with verbs of depriving, denying, and the like. The object withheld is put in the genitive: *nis Angelcynn be-dæled Dryhtnes hālgena* ‘England is not deprived of thy Lord’s saints’. Some such verbs take a dative of person: *him wæs of-togen ælcēs fōdes* ‘they were deprived of all food’.

The genitive is sometimes used adverbially: *dæges* ‘by day’, *ealles* ‘altogether’, *þæs* ‘therefore’, ‘after that’.

Dative

87. The dative in O.E. has two broad divisions of function: (1) the dative proper, (2) the instrumental dative, interchanging with the formal instrumental where that exists.

(1) The dative proper usually designates personal relations or interest. Its characteristic use is with verbs, to express the indirect object, often accompanied by an accusative of the direct object: *hē sealde ælcum āhne pening* ‘he gave each a penny’. It is used also with verbs of addressing and the like: *ič ēow secge* ‘I say to you’; *hē þancode his Dryhtne* ‘he thanked his Lord’; (but *cweþan* usually has *tō*: *þā cweþp his hlāford tō him* ‘then his master said to him’). So also with many verbs denoting benefit, advantage, disadvantage, influence, &c.: *Hēr bæd Burgred Æþelwulf cyning þæt hē him gē-fultumode* ‘In this year Burgred asked King Ethelwulf to help him’; *þæm rēpum stierde* ‘restrained the cruel ones’; *þæt him bīp æt-brogden* ‘that shall be taken away from him’; and with less specific verbs with similar implication: *ne dō ič þe nānne tēonan* ‘I do you no injury’; *bycgap ēow ele* ‘buy yourselves oil’; *hē worhton āne ciričan weorþlīce þæm hālgan* ‘they built a church to the saint in splendid fashion’.

Some impersonal verbs are accompanied by a dative of the person affected: *nū þyncp mē* ‘now it seems to me’; *swā swā him sippað a-eode* ‘as it afterwards happened to him’.

The dative is virtually possessive in many phrases: *hē slōgon*

him of þæt hēafod ‘they struck off his head’; *and hē þone witegan him tō handum ā·scēaf* ‘and he thrust the prophet into their hands’. To this is related a frequent idiomatic construction in which a dative noun or pronoun denoting the person concerned is followed by a prepositional phrase with *tō* indicating purpose, intended function, &c.: *hīe ge·sōhton Bretene Bretum tō ful-tume* ‘they came to Britain as a help to (to help) the Britons’; *Gode tō lāce* ‘as a sacrifice to God’; *mannum tō sweotolunge* ‘as a sign to men’; *pāem sancte tō weorþmynde* ‘in honour of the saint’.

With some verbs, especially of motion, a reflexive dative pronoun is used pleonastically: *Abrahām fērde him hām* ‘Abraham went home’.

The dative is also used with adjectives of nearness, likeness, &c.: *Eadmund clipode ānnē bispop þe him ge·hendost wās* ‘Edmund summoned a bishop who was nearest at hand to him’; *sē biþ ge·līc pāem dysigan menn* ‘he is like the foolish man’.

(2) The instrumental dative denotes the instrument or the manner of an action: *hē ge·snōdode yflum dēape* ‘he died (by) an evil death’; *hiera willum* ‘of their own accord’. Hence its use to form adverbs, as *scēafnālum* ‘in sheaves’.

It also signifies time when (which may also be expressed by the instrumental itself): *prim gēarum ār hē forþfērde* ‘three years before he died’.

A combination of past participle and noun in the dative is sometimes used in imitation of the Latin ablative absolute: *ge·wordenre ge·cwidrādenne* ‘an agreement having been made’; *ge·wunnenum sige* ‘victory having been won’.

Instrumental

88. The instrumental denotes means or manner: *Gāius se cāsere, ðōpre naman Iūlius* ‘the emperor Gaius, (called) Julius by another name’. It is used to form adverbs, as *micle* ‘much, by far’, *þy* ‘therefore’.

It often expresses time when: *ālcē gēare* ‘every year’; *þy ilcan dæge* ‘on the same day’.

ADJECTIVES

89. The weak forms are used in defining or demonstrative situations, in particular:

(1) after the definite article: *se æpela cyning* ‘the noble king’; *pone hālgan lichaman* ‘the holy body’; *pæt hālge hēafod* ‘the holy head’; *pæm ge·swenctan folce* ‘to the harassed people’.

(2) after *pes*, *pis*, *pēos*: *pes hālga cyning* ‘this holy king’; *pās earman landlēode* ‘these poor people’ (pl.); *pēos niwe lār* ‘this new doctrine’.

(3) often, but not always, after possessive adjectives and the genitive of pronouns: *pīne dīeglan goldhordas* ‘your hidden treasures’; *mīne clānan handa* ‘my clean hands’; *purh his māran hālgan* ‘through his glorious saints’. But *mid mīnum āgnum māgne* ‘by my own power’.

(4) usually, but not invariably, in vocative phrases: *pū yfla pēow and slāwa!* ‘thou bad and slothful servant!'; *ēalū pū leofa cyning!* ‘oh, beloved king!’ But *ic bidde pē, lēof ealdormann . . .* ‘I beg you, dear ealdormann . . .’

(5) in the comparative of adjectives, and ordinal numbers: *se hālga is mārra* ‘the saint is more glorious’; *nigontēope healf gēar* ‘eighteen and a half years’.

But *ōper* always keeps the strong form: *pā ūþru dēor* ‘the other wild beasts’. So also do the possessive adjectives: *pās mīn word* ‘these words of mine’.

ARTICLES

90. The definite article is omitted as in Mn.E. before names such as *God*; also before *Dryhten* ‘the Lord’, *dēfol* ‘the Devil’ —though *se dēfol* also occurs; and before names of nations: *Bretta cyning* ‘king of the Britons’, and of rivers: *ofer Temese* ‘over the Thames’.

It is omitted in many prepositional phrases, some in which Mn.E. also omits it, as *sigfæst on sē and on lande* ‘victorious on land and sea’, but also many others. These are mostly set expressions, as in *hē fēng tō rīce* ‘he came to the throne’; *hē*

sige nāmon 'they won the victory'; *se flothere fērde eft tō scipe* 'the army of pirates went back to their ships'; but sometimes the reference is more precise, as *se wulf . . . ġe-wende eft sippān tō wuda on-ġēan* 'the wolf afterwards went back again to the wood'.

On the other hand, the definite article is sometimes used where it would not be now: *sēo dēah ġe-hwæþer ġe þæs mannes sāwle* *ġe his līchaman* 'it, is good both for man's soul and for his body'.

When a noun in the genitive, with the definite article, precedes another noun on which it depends, and which would also have an article if it stood alone, only the article in the genitive is used: *æt þæs hālgan byrġenne* 'at the saint's tomb'; contrast *tō þām hālgan bodīge* 'to the holy body'.

An indefinite article is used much less than in Mn.E.: *pæt dyde unhold mann* 'an enemy did that'; *hē be-stealcode on land swā swā wulf* 'he stole to land like a wolf'. Sometimes it is expressed by *ān*: *ān wulf wearþ ā-send* 'a wolf had been sent'; this is used especially in introducing particular persons or things: *ān mann wæs eardiende on Israhēla pēode, Manuē ġe-hāten* 'a (certain) man lived in Israel called Manue'. *Sum* is often used thus: *on þām lande wæs sum mann, Lēofstān ġe-hāten* 'there was a man in that country called Leofstan'.

VERBS

Number

91. With nouns of multitude the verb is usually singular when it is near the noun, but often plural when separated from it, especially in co-ordinate clauses: *se flothere fērde eft tō scipe, and be-hyddon þæt hēafod* 'the army of pirates went back to their ships, and hid the head'.

When a verb precedes a compound subject, it is often put in the singular, agreeing only with the nearest noun: *Hēr bæd Burgred, Miercna cyning, and his witan Æpelwulf cyning . . .* 'In this year Burgred, king of Mercia, and his councillors asked King Ethelwulf . . .'.

After *ælc pāra be* 'each of those who' the verb is put in the singular, agreeing with the number not of *pāra* but of *ælc*; *ælc pāra be pās mīn word ġe-hīerb* 'everyone who hears these words of mine'.

Tenses

92. There are no distinct future forms in O.E. The present tense is used to express future time: *ne ā-býhp nāfre Ēadmund Hinguare* 'Edmund will never submit to Hinguar'; *gā ġē on mīnne wīngeward, and ic selle ēow pāt riht bīp* 'go into my vineyard, and I will give you what is right'. As this latter example shows, in the verb 'to be' the forms of *beon* (rather than *eom*, *is*, &c.) tend to be used if a future sense is implied. Other examples are: *gif ic bēo ġe-bunden mid seofon rāpum, sōna ic bēo ġe-wield* 'if I am bound with seven ropes, I shall at once be overcome'; *swā bēop pā fyrmestan ytemeste* 'so the first shall be last'. These forms are also used to express what 'generally happens ('gnomically'): *ælc mann be wīsdōm lufap bīp ġe-sālīg* 'every man who loves wisdom is happy'.

The future is, however, sometimes expressed by *will* and *shall*, almost as in M.N.E., though generally with a sense of volition with the one, and of necessity or obligation with the other: *ic wille piſsum ytemestan sellan eall swā mičel swā pē* 'I mean to give to this last just as much as I give to you'. Simple futurity appears most clearly in the preterites *wolde* and *scolde* in indirect speech: *hīe wēndon pāt hīe scolden māre on-fōn* 'they expected to receive more' (translating *essent accep-turi*).

The preterite has the meaning of the modern

(1) past continuous and past: *pā pā menn slēpon, pā cōm his fēonda sum* 'while men were sleeping, one of his enemies came'.

(2) perfect: *pās ytemestan worhton āne tīd, and pū dydest hīe ġe-līce ūs, be bāron byrpenna on piſses dægēs hātan* 'these last have worked one hour, and you have made them equal to us, who have borne burdens in the heat of this day'.

(3) pluperfect: *pā pā gē-cōmon þe ymbe pā endleoftan tīd cōmon* ‘when those came up who had come at the eleventh hour’.

Periphrastic tenses are sometimes formed, as in Mn.E., by *hæbbe* and *hæfde* with past participles, and often have the meanings of the modern perfect and pluperfect respectively, as in *nū ic hæbbe gē-strīened ðpru twā* ‘now I have gained another two’; but even the form, with *hæfde* sometimes has the sense of a simple past. The past participle in such combinations is left uninflected in the later language; but earlier it was put in the accusative, because regarded not as part of the verb form but as an adjective agreeing with the noun or pronoun object of *habban*. Both constructions may appear in the same text: *hie hæfdon hiera cyning ā-worpenne* ‘they had deposed their king’; but *and hine hæfde ār Offa and Beorhtric ā-flīemed* ‘and Offa and Beorhtric had driven him into exile’.

As in the last example, the pluperfect sense is often emphasized by the addition of the adverb *ār* ‘before’. This is also often used with a simple preterite with the same force: *his swēora, þe ār wæs for-slægen* ‘his neck, which had been cut through’.

Periphrastic tenses of intransitive verbs are formed with *wesan* instead of *habban*: *pā hit wæs āfen gē-worden* ‘when it had become evening’; *sippā hie ā-farene wæron* ‘after they had gone away’. Here the participle agrees with the noun or pronoun with which it is connected.

Habitual action in the past is sometimes expressed by *wolde*: *seo wolde efsian ālīce gēare þone sanct* ‘she used to cut the saint’s hair every year’.

Periphrastic tenses formed with *wesan* and the present participle occur frequently, especially translating Latin participial constructions. They do not correspond in sense, except accidentally, to modern ‘continuous’ tenses. Sometimes they mean no more than a simple tense: *pā wæs se cyning openlīce andet-tende þæt hē wolde fæstlīce þām dēofolgieldum wiþ-sacan* ‘then the king publicly acknowledged that he would resolutely

renounce the idols'. Sometimes they imply duration of an action: *and þær wæs twelf mōnāþ wuniende* 'and stayed there for twelve months'.

Passive

93. Except for the form *hātte* (§ 53), the passive is formed periphrastically with *wesan* or *weorpan* and the past participle. These forms are very vague in meaning, and the distinction between the two auxiliaries is not clearly marked. Generally *wesan* appears to indicate a state, *weorpan* an action: *nū is sēo bōc swīpe nearolice ġe-sett* 'now the book is composed in very summary fashion'; *op þæt hē eall wæs be-sett mid hiera scotungum* 'until he was covered all over with their missiles'; *hē wurdon þā ġe-brōhte tō þām biscope* 'they were then brought to the bishop'. But *his swēora wæs ġe-hālod, þe ðer wæs for-slægen, and wæs swelcē ān seolcen prād ymbe his swēoran rēad, mannum tō sweotolunge hū hē of-slægen wæs* 'his neck, which had been cut through, was healed, and it was as if there were a silken thread, red, round his neck, to show men how he had been slain'.

Subjunctive

94. The subjunctive states something not as a fact, as the indicative does, but merely as an object of thought. Hence it is used to express wish, condition, doubt, and the like.

A. In principal sentences

Wish:

pæs him sīe wuldor ā būtan ende 'therefore glory be to Him ever without end'; *God pē sīe milde* 'God be merciful to you'. Command (usually third person, where it is equivalent to imperative):

ne hē ealu ne drince oppe wīn 'nor shall he drink ale or wine'.

B. In dependent clauses

(1) In indirect narrative:

ič him sægde þæt hē for-ealdod wāre 'I told him that he was very aged'; and especially in indirect question: *ič āscīge hwār*

sēo offrung sīe ‘I ask where the offering is’; *menn woldon scēawian hū hē lāge* ‘men wished to see how he lay’. But when the reported statement contains an objective fact, certain in itself and not given merely on the authority of the speaker, it is put in the indicative: *hē h̄iere s̄agde on hwām his strengpu wæs* ‘he told her what his strength consisted in’; *hē s̄agde þām ārlēasan hū him gē-andwyrda wæs* ‘he told the impious man how he had been answered’.

(2) After verbs of desiring and commanding:

pæs ic ge-wilniġe and ge-wysce mid mōde, þæt ic āna ne be-life ‘this I desire and wish in my heart, that I may not remain alone’; *h̄ie hēton his lēode þæt h̄ie hine ā-gēafen tō h̄iera anwealde* ‘they commanded his people to surrender him into their power’.

(3) After impersonal verbs denoting ‘it is right’ and the like:

ȝeongum mannum ge-dafenap þæt h̄ie leornien sumne wīsdōm ‘it behoves young men to acquire some learning’.

(4) To express purpose:

h̄ie be-hyddon þæt hēafod, þæt hit be-byrgēd ne wurde ‘they hid the head, so that it should not be buried’; *þy-lās gē þone hwāte ā-wyrtwalien* ‘lest you root up the wheat’.

(5) To express potentiality, especially in clauses dependent on a negative sentence or antecedent:

pū næfst þā miht þæt pū mæġe him wiþ-standan ‘you have not the strength to be able to resist him’; *nis nān þing be his mihte wiþ-stande* ‘there is nothing to resist his power’.

(6) To express hypothetical comparison (‘as if’):
swelcē hē tam wāre ‘as if he were tame’.

(7) In concessive clauses:

God hielte Ēadmunde hālne his līchaman, þēah be hē of moldan cōme ‘God keeps Edmund’s body whole, though he came from the earth’ (i.e. had been buried).

(8) In clauses of hypothetical condition (usually introduced by *gifu* or *būtan*):

gifu mannes hēafod tō-brocen sīe ‘if a man’s head is broken’; *þās flotmenn þē cƿicne gē-bindap, būtan þū mid flēame þīnum fēore gē-beorge* ‘these pirates will bind you alive, unless you save your life by flight’. So also with *wip þām pe* ‘on condition that, provided that’: *hīe be-hēton hīere sceattas wip þām pe hēo be-swice Samson* ‘they promised her money in consideration of her betraying Samson’.

When the condition is assumed to be unreal, instead of merely hypothetical as in the above examples, both clauses have their verbs in the subjunctive; and the preterite tense is used with reference to present time, as in Mn.E. also, where *if I were* implies *I am not*. (The modern distinction between *if I were* and *if I had been* is not made in O.E., which uses *gifu ic wāre* in both situations.) So *mē lēofre wāre þæt ic on gē-feohte fēolle, wip þām pe mīn folc mōste hīera eardes brūcan* ‘I would rather fall in fight, provided that my people might possess their country’; cf. *ic wolde* swīpor sweltan, gif ic porfte* ‘I would rather die (= should wish rather to die) if I had to’.

A condition may also be expressed without conjunction by a verb in the subjunctive placed before its subject: *ic nylle ā-būgan fram his bīgengum æfre, swelte ic, libbe ic* ‘I will not swerve from his worship ever, whether I die or live’.

Conditions regarded as possible, or ‘open’, have the indicative: *gif þu eart tō hēafodmenn gē-sett* ‘if you are set in a position of authority’.

(9) After some conjunctions originally implying anticipation or intended result:

hīne hāfde ēr Offa and Beorhtrīc ā-flēimed ēr hē cyning wāre ‘Offa and Beorhtric had driven him into exile before he was king’ (strictly ‘before he should be king’; but *ēr* comes to be used with the subjunctive even when the sense of anticipation is virtually absent); *þīn rīce gē-witt fram þē, op þæt þū wite þæt God gē-wielt manna rīcu* ‘your kingdom shall depart

from you, until you know that God has power over the kingdoms of men' (archaically, 'shall know').

In place of the pretorite subjunctive *scolde* with infinitive is often used, as *should* in Mn.E., and *wolde* sometimes. *Scolde* occurs after verbs of desiring, requesting, and commanding: *pū bāde mē pāt ič scolde pē ā-wendan pā bōc* 'you asked me to translate the book for you'; *biddende þone Ælmihtigan pāt hē him ārian scolde* 'praying the Almighty to have mercy on him'; *ič be-bēad pāt sē mann sē ne wāre mid his wāpnum æfter fierd-wisan gē-giered pāt hine man scolde ā-cwellan* 'I gave orders that if any man was not armed in campaign order he should be killed'. (In the relative clause here, *wāre* is subjunctive in the indirect command; but it would in any case be subjunctive as virtually conditional.) In the following the command is contained in the noun *ārende*: *hē sende bēvlič ārende, pāt hē ā-būgan scolde tō his mannrādenne* 'he sent a threatening message, that he was to submit to his allegiance'.

Similar use of *scyle* in the present is rarer: *hit ne gē-byrep pām pe bēop gē-corene God: tō pegnienne pāt hī gē-pwārlācan scylen on ānges mannes dēape* 'it is not fitting for those who are chosen to serve God that they should consent to the death of any man'.

Infinitive

95. After verbs of command the active infinitive is used where Mn.E. would require a passive: *hī hēton him sendan māran fultum* 'they ordered greater forces to be sent to them'. So also after verbs of hearing and the like (still used in *hear tell*): *pāt māste wāl pe wē secgan hīerdon* 'the greatest slaughter that we have heard tell of'; *gīf sum dysig mann pās bōc rāett oppe rādan gē-hierp* 'if some foolish man reads this book or hears it read'. In such constructions an indefinite object is implied: 'ordered (them, people) to send', &c.

The inflected infinitive preceded by *tō* is used

(1) to express purpose: *ān wulf wearp ā-send tō be-werienne pāt hēafod* 'a wolf had been sent to guard the head';

(2) to complement the sense of some verbs, e.g. 'begin', 'cease', 'forbid', 'teach': *hē be·gann þā tō winnenne wiþ þā Philistēos* 'he began then to fight against the Philistines'; *Crist and his apostolas ūs tæhton ægþer tō healdenne* 'Christ and his apostles taught us to observe both'. Such verbs may also be followed by the plain infinitive: *Peohtas on·gunnon eardian þā norþdælas þisses ieglandes* 'the Picts began to inhabit the northern parts of this island';

(3) to define or determine the reference of an adjective: *þā þūhte mē hefigtīeme þē tō tīpienne þæs* 'then it seemed to me burdensome to grant you that'; *þæt weorc is swīþe plēolic mē oppe ængum menn tō underbe·ginnenne* 'that task is very hazardous for me or any man to undertake';

(4) to express necessity or fitness: *is ēac tō witenne* 'it must also be known'.

The infinitive of verbs of motion is often omitted after auxiliary verbs: *þær þær hīe tō scoldon* 'where they had to go'.

PREPOSITIONS

96. Some prepositions govern the accusative, e.g. *oþ* 'until', *þurh* 'through', *ymbe* 'about'; some the dative (often the instrumental also), e.g. *æfter* 'after', *ær* 'before', *æt* 'at', *be* 'about, by', *binnan* 'within', *bütan* 'without, except', *for* 'for', *fram* 'from, by', *mid* 'with', *of* 'from', *tō* 'to'.

Some govern both accusative and dative, e.g. *ofer* 'over', *on* 'on, in', *under* 'under'. In general, when motion is implied they take the accusative, when rest is implied, the dative. Thus *on* with accusative means 'into', with dat. 'in'. But the distinction is not strictly maintained; the accusative sometimes occurs where there is no motion, as *on ge-hwæþere hand* 'on both sides', the dative where there is, as *ymb twā gēar þæs þe hē on Francum cōm* 'about two years after he went to France'. Usually, however, when the usage appears irregular it is explicable by a different attitude to the action: in *sē his hūs ofer stān ge-timbrode* 'who built his house on a rock', the acc. *stān* may be accounted

for by considering the process of building rather than the completed state. But to express point of time, *on* is used indifferently with accusative and dative: *Abrahām þā ā·rās on þāre ilcan nihte* ‘Abraham then arose on the same night’, but *þā on þone þriddan dæg þā cwæþ Abrahām . . .* ‘then on the third day Abraham said . . .’. In the sense ‘against’, *wiþ* takes accusative more commonly, but also dative: *hīe wiþ þone here winnende wāron* ‘they fought against the (Danish) army’; *hīe ge·fuhton wiþ hāþnum heriȝe* ‘they fought against a heathen army’.

A few prepositions take the genitive, as well as other cases; e.g. *wiþ* meaning ‘towards’, and *tō* of purpose, as *sweliche him tō gamenes* ‘as if for their sport’, or of degree, as *tō þæs* ‘to such an extent, so’.

When a thing is referred to, *þær* is substituted for the appropriate case of *hit*, and the preposition is appended to it, so that *þær·tō* corresponds to the masc. *tō him*: *hīe lāddon þone cyning tō ānum trēowe, and tīegdon hīne þær·tō* ‘they led the king to a tree, and tied him’ to it’.

Prepositions often follow, instead of preceding, the words they modify, sometimes with other words intervening. This occurs especially with *on*, *tō*, and the longer prepositions: *Eadmund cwæþ cynelīcē him tō* ‘Edmund said to him with kingly dignity’; *farap him tō·gēanes* ‘go to meet him’. It is common in relative clauses introduced by the indeclinable particle *þe*, to which the preposition refers: *þām Ælmihtigan tō lofe, þe hīe on gē·liefdon* ‘to the glory of the Almighty, in whom they believed’; *þāt hūs þe hē inne wunode* ‘the house he was staying in’.

The noun or pronoun modified by a preposition is sometimes left unexpressed, and the preposition functions as an adverb: *cōm þāt land-folc tō* ‘the people of the country came there’; *hīe scuton þā mid gafelucum tō* ‘they shot at him then with spears’.

Several of the prepositions differ considerably in use from their modern descendants. In particular, *in* is seldom used,

its place being supplied by *on*. The meaning 'on' is in its turn often expressed by *ofer*, as in *ofer stān ġe-timbrod* 'built on a rock'. The commonest sense of *wiþ* is 'against', 'with' being expressed by *mid*; *of* means mostly 'from', *fram* commonly 'by'.

Some prepositions combine with cases of the pronoun *pæt* to form compound adverbs and conjunctions; e.g. *for þām* 'therefore', *for þām (þe)* 'because', *mis' þy* 'when', *wiþ þām þe* 'provided that'.

NEGATION

97. The negative particle is *ne*, which drops *e* and combines with some common verbs and pronouns, as *nis = ne is*, *nān = ne ān*. In a negative sentence the particle is prefixed to every finite verb, and, in addition, to every word which may have a contracted negative form: *hit nā ne feoll* 'it did not fall'; *hīe ne nāmon nānne ele* 'they took no oil'. So also with *ne . . . ne* 'neither . . . nor': *ne ġe-seah ic nāfre þā burg, ne ic þone sēap nāt* 'I have never seen the city, nor do I know the pit'; *sē þe nāwper nyle ne leornian ne tācān* 'he who will neither learn nor teach'.

INTERROGATION

98. Direct questions are usually expressed by placing verb before subject: *ne for-lētt hē þā nigon and hund-nigontiġ?* 'will he not leave the ninety-nine?' Similarly after interrogative words: *Hwȳ stande ġē ealne dæg īidle?* 'Why do you stand idle all day?'

CORRELATION

99. Correlation between subordinate and principal clauses is expressed much oftener than in Mn.E., generally by the use of corresponding words in both: *þā se brȳdguma ielde, þā hnappodon hīe* 'while the bridegroom delayed, (then) they dozed'; *þā þā hīe blipost wāron, þā bādon hīe sume . . .* 'when they were merriest, (then) some of them asked . . .'; *and þy fultumode Beorhtriċ Offan þy hē hæfde his dohtor him*

tō cwēne ‘and it was for this reason that Beorhtric helped Offa (namely) because he had married his daughter’. In the following example the pronoun *pæt* (in the gen., governed by *ge-wilnige*) anticipates the clause introduced by the conjunction *pæt*: *pæs ic ge-wilnige, pæt, ic āna ne be-līfe* ‘this I desire, that I may not remain alone’.

On the other hand, sometimes a single word bears both the demonstrative and the relative meaning: *hē ge-brōhte hine pær hē hine ær ge-nam* ‘he brought him to where he had taken him from’. Cf. § 50, end.

100.

WORD-ORDER

Nouns and adjectives

Attributive adjectives normally precede their nouns: *micel flōd* ‘a great flood’, *se forespēcēna here* ‘the army before mentioned’. Names and short phrases in the genitive also usually precede nouns which they qualify, though for rhythm or emphasis they may follow: *West-seaxna cyning* ‘king of the West Saxons’; *pisses īeglāndes bīgēngan* ‘the inhabitants of this island’; but, in Ælfric’s rhythmical prose: *and be-hyddon pæt hēafod pæs hālgan Eadmundes* ‘and hid the head of the holy Edmund’. When two co-ordinate adjectives qualify a noun, they are usually separated as in the traditional ‘good men and true’: *pū gōda pēow and ge-trēowa* ‘thou good and faithful servant’?

A title used with a proper name, and without a demonstrative, follows the name: *Ælfred æpeling* ‘Prince Alfred’. A common noun qualified by the genitive of such a group is usually placed between the name and the title: *on Cȳres dagum cyninges* ‘in the days of King Cyrus’; but not always: *on Æpelredes cyninges dæge* ‘in King Ethelred’s day’.

For order with prepositions see § 96.

Parts of the sentence

(1) In a simple principal sentence, with no introductory demonstrative and no special emphasis, the normal order of

elements is subject-verb-object: *hēo be·swāc hine* ‘she betrayed him’; *ič ge·sette þē ofer miclu* ‘I will set you over great things’; *se cyning hēt hīe feohtan* ‘the king ordered them to fight’. When the finite verb is an auxiliary with infinitive or past participle, the object or adverbial adjuncts (or both) often come between the auxiliary and the infinitive or participle: *ič Ælfrič wolde þās lýtlan bōc ā·wendan* ‘I, Ælfric, wished to translate this little book’; *þās cyninges hās wearþ hrædlicē ge·fremed* ‘the king’s command was quickly carried out’.

Sometimes the object or complement is put first for emphasis, and the order simply reversed: *þā stōwe habbaþ gīet his ierfenuman* ‘that place his successors still have’; *māre is se God þe Daniél on be·liēfp* ‘great is the God that Daniel believes in’.

(2) In a principal sentence introduced by a demonstrative adverb or adverbial phrase, especially *þā* ‘then’, the verb follows the demonstrative immediately, and the subject comes next: *þā rīnde hit* ‘then it rained’; *þā swigode se cyning* ‘then the king was silent’; *þȳ ilcan gēare ge·sette Ælfred cyning Lundenburg* ‘in the same year King Alfred occupied London’; *on his dagum sende Gregorius ūs fulluht* ‘in his time Gregory sent baptism to us’. The order is thus adverb-verb-subject-(object). Except after *þā*, however, normal order is not infrequent in this type of sentence: *aftēr piſſum hē fērde tō Philistēa landē* ‘after this he went to the land of the Philistines’, and especially in the Chronicle after the recurrent *Hēr*: *Hēr Hengest and Horsa fuhton wiþ Wyrtgeorne*.

A special class is formed by negative sentences, which very often begin with negative particle+verb: *ne cweþe ič nā for þȳ . . .* ‘I do not say therefore . . .’; *ne ā·býhp Eadmund Hinguare* ‘Edmund will not submit to Hinguar’; *nās mē nāfre ge·wunelic* ‘it was never customary for me’.

(3) In a dependent clause, introduced by a conjunction or relative pronoun, the verb is usually left to the end. An auxiliary verb then follows its associated infinitive or participle. The typical order is connective-subject-object-verb: (*þā ærestan scipu Denisca manna*) *þe Angelcynnes land ge·sōhton* ‘(the

first ships of Danish men) which came to England'; *pæt hie þone Godes mann ā-bītan scolden* 'in order that they should devour the man of God'; *gīf hwā pās bōc ā-wrītan wile* 'if anyone wishes to copy this book'; *ār pām pe sēo ealde ā gē-sett wāre* 'before the Old Law had been established'. Absolutely final position of the verb is by no means universal; even when it follows an object or a phrase it is sometimes itself followed by another element: *pæt māste wæl pe wē secgan hierdon op þisne andweardan dæg* 'the greatest slaughter that we have heard tell of up to this present day'.

This typical order of dependent clauses combines with that of (2) above to form the characteristic pattern of correlative sentences: *pā sēo wyrt wēox, and þone wæstm brōhte, pā æt-iewde se coccel hine* 'when the plant grew, and brought forth the crop, then the cockle showed itself'; *pā hie pā hāmweard wendon mid pāre herehýpe, pā mēton hie micelne sciphere wīcinga* 'as they were going homewards with the booty, they came upon a great fleet of pirates'. See also § 99.

The order of (3) is found not only in subordinate clauses such as those illustrated, but also very commonly in co-ordinate clauses joined to the main clause by *and* (also *ac*), especially when the subject is the same as that of the main clause and is left unexpressed: . . . *and nigon scipu gē-fēngon, and pā ðpru gē-fliemdon; and hāþne menn ārest ofer winter sāton* 'and captured nine ships, and put the others to flight; and heathen men first stayed over the winter'.

These three varieties of order are the basic types; but none of them is invariably observed, and much depends on the weight and rhythm of particular phrases and on the individual style of authors. By Ælfric's time a completely modern order (except for the negative) occasionally appears: *wē sculon ā-wendan ūrne willan tō his gē-setnessum, and wē ne magon gē-bīegan his gē-setnessa tō ūrum lustum.*

TEXTS

I

FROM THE GOSPEL OF ST. MATTHEW

VII. 24-27

Ælc þāra þe þās mīn word ȝe-hierþ, and þā wyrchþ, biþ ȝe-lič þām wiſan were, sē his hūs ofer stān ȝe-timbrode. Þā cōm þær regeñ and mičel flōd, and þær blēowon windas, and ā-hruron on þæt hūs, and hit nā ne fēoll: sōþliče hit wæs ofer 5 stān ȝe-timbrod.

And ælc þāra þe ȝe-hierþ þās mīn word, and þā ne wyrchþ, sē biþ ȝe-lič þām dysigan menn, þe ȝe-timbrode his hūs ofer sand-ċeosol. Þā rīnde hit, and þær cōmon flōd, and blēowon windas, and ā-hruron on þæt hūs, and þæt hūs fēoll; and his 10 hryre wæs mičel.

XIII. 24-30

Heofona rīce is ȝe-worden þām menn ȝe-lič þe sēow gōd sād on his æcere. Sōþliče, þā þā menn slēpon, þā cōm his fēonda sum, and ofer-sēow hit mid coccele on-middan þām-hwāte, and ferde þanon. Sōþliče, þā sēo wyrt wēox, and þone wæstum 15 brōhte, þā æt-īewde se coccel hine. Þā ēodon þās hlāfordes þēowas and cwādon: ‘Hlāford, hū, ne sēowe þū gōd sād on þīnum æcere? Hwanon hæfde hē coccel?’ Þā cwāþ hē: ‘Þæt dyde unhold mann.’ Þā cwādon þā þēowas: ‘Wilt þū, wē gāþ and gadriāþ hīe?’ Þā cwāþ hē: ‘Nese: þȳ-lās ȝē þone hwāte 20 ȝāwyrtwalien, þonne ȝē þone coccel gadriāþ. Lātaþ ȝēgþer weaxan oþ rīp-tīman; and on þām rīptīman ic secge þām rīperum: “Gadriāþ ȝērest þone coccel, and bindaþ scēaf-mālum tō for-bærnenne; and gadriāþ þone hwāte in-tō minum berne.”’

XVIII. 12-14

‘Gif hwelc mann hæfþ hund scēapa, and him losaþ ān of þām, 25
hū, ne for-lætt hē þā nigon and hund-nigontig on þām mun-
tum, and gæþ, and sēcþ þæt ān þe for-wearþ? And gif hit
ge-limpþ þæt hē hit fint, sōþlice ic ēow secge þæt hē swīþor
ge-blissap for þām ānum þonne ofer þā nigon and hund-nigon-
tig þe nā ne losodon. 30

XX. 1-16

Heofona rīce is ge-līc þām hīredes ealdre þe on ārne-mergen
ūt ēode ā-hýrian wyrhtan on his wīn-geard. Ge-wordenre
ge-cwid-rædenne þām wyrhtum, hē sealde ālcum ānne pening
wiþ his dæges weorce, and ā-sende hīe on his wīngeard. And
þā hē ūt ēode ymbe undern-tid, hē ge-seah ðōpre on strāte idle 35
standan. Þā cwæþ hē: ‘Gā gē on mīnne wīngeard, and ic selle
ēow þæt riht biþ.’ And hīe þā fērdon. Eft hē ūt ēode ymbe þā
siextan and nigoþan tīd, and dyde þām swā ge-līce. Þā ymbe
þā endleoftan tīd hē ūt ēode, and funde ðōpre standende, and
þā sægde hē: ‘Hwȳ stande gē hēr ealne dæg idle?’ Þā cwædon 40
hīe: ‘For þām þe ūs nān mann ne hȳrode.’ Þā cwæþ hē: ‘And
gā gē on mīnne wīngeard.’

Sōþlice þā hit wæs æfen ge-worden, þā sægde se wīngeardes
hlāford his ge-rēfan: ‘Clipa þā wyrhtan, and ā-gief him hīera
mēde; on-ginn fram þām ytemestan oþ þone fyrmestan.’ 45
Eornostlīc þā þā ge-cōmon þe ymbe þā endleoftan tīd cōmon,
þā on-fēngon hīe ālc his pening. And þā þe þār ārest cōmon
wēndon þæt hīe scolden māre on-fōn; þā on-fēngon hīe syn-
drīge peningas. Þā on-gunnon hīe murcnian on-gēan þone
hīredes ealdor, and þūs cwædon: ‘Þās ytemestan worhton āne 50
tīd, and þū dydest hīe ge-līce ūs, þe bāron byrþenna on þisses
dæges hātan.’ Þā cwæþ hē andswariende hīera ānum: ‘Ēalā þū
f rēond, ne dō ic þē nānne tēonan; hū, ne cōme þū tō mē tō
wyrčenne wiþ ānum peninge? Nim þæt þīn is, and gā; ic wille
þissum ytemestan sellan eall swā mičel swā þē. Oþþe ne mōt 55
ic dōn þæt ic wille? Hwæþer þe þīn ēage mān-full is for þām

þe ic gōd eom? Swā bēoþ þā fyrmestan ytemeste, and þā ytemestan fyrmeste; sōþlīcē manige sind ge·clipode, and fēawe ge·corene.'

XXV. 1-13

60 Jonne biþ heofona ričē ge·lic þām tien fāmnum, þe þā lēohtfatu nāmon, and fērdon on·gēan þone brȳd-guman and þā brȳd. Hiera fif wāron dysige, and fif glēawe. Ac þā fif dysigan nāmon lēohtfatu, and ne nāmon nānne ele mid him; þā glēawan nāmon ele on hiera fatum mid þām lēohtfatum. Þā se brȳd-
65 guma ielde, þā hnappodon hie calle, and slēpon. Witodlīcē tō midre nihte man hr̄iemde, and cwæþ: 'Nū se brȳdguma cymb, faraþ him tō·gēanes.' Þā ā·rison calle þā fāmnan, and glenȝdon hiera lēohtfatu. Þā cwædon þā dysigan tō þām wīsum: 'Sellap ūs of ēowrum ele, for þām ūre lēohtfatu sind ā·cwenctu.'

70 Þā andswarodon þā glēawan, and cwædon: 'Nesc; þy·lās þe wē and gē næbbēn ge·nōg. Gāþ tō þām cīependum, and bycgāþ ēow ele.' Witodlīcē, þā hie fērdon, and woldon bycgan, þā cōm se brȳdguma; and þā þe ȝearwe wāron ēodon inn mid him tō þām gieftum; and sēo duru wās be·locen. Þā æt nīehstan
75 cōmon þā ȳþre fāmnan, and cwædon: 'Dryhten, dryhten, lāt ūs inn.' Þā andswarode hē him, and cwæþ: 'Sōþ ic ēow secge, ne cann ic ēow.' Witodlīcē, waciaþ, for þām þe gē nyton ne þone dæg ne þā tīd.

XXV. 14-30

Sum mann fērde on el·þēodignesse, and clipode his þēowas,
80 and be·tāhte him his ēhta. And ānum hē sealde fif pund, sumum twā, sumum ān: ȝēhwelcum be his āgnūm mægne; and fērde sōna.

Þā fērde sē þe þā fif pund under·fēng, and ge·striende ȳþru fife. And eall-swā sē þe þā twā under·fēng, ge·striende ȳþru
85 twā. Witodlīcē sē þe þāt ān under·fēng fērde, and be·dealf hit on eorþan, and be·hydde his hlāfordes feoh.

Witodlīcē æfter miclum fierste cōm þāra þēowa hlāford, and

dihte him ge·rād. Þā cōm sē þe þā fif pund under·fēng, and brōhte ȳþru fīfe, and cwæþ: ‘Hlāford, fif pund þū sealdest mē; nū ič ge·striende ȳþru fīfe.’ Þā cwæþ his hlāford tō him: 90 ‘Bēo bliþe, þū gōda þēow and ge·trēowa: for þām þe þū wāre ge·trēowe ofer lȳþlu þīng, ič ge·sette þē ofer miclu. Gā intō þīnes hlāfordes blisse.’ Þā cōm sē þe þā twā pund under·fēng, and cwæþ: ‘Hlāford, twā pund þū mē sealdest; nū ič hæbbe ge·striened ȳþru twā.’ Þā cwæþ his hlāford tō him: ‘Gc·blissa, 95 þū gōda þēow and ge·trēowa: for þām þe þū wāre ge·trēowe ofer fēa, ofer fela ič þē ge·sette. Gā on þīnes hlāfordes ge·fēan.’

Þā cōm sē þe þæt ān pund under·fēng, and cwæþ: ‘Hlāford, ič wāt þæt þū cart heard mann: þū rīpst þār þū ne sēowe, and gadraſt þār þū ne sprengdest. And ič fērde of·drādd, and 100 be·hȳdde þīn pund on eorþan. Hēr þū hæfst þæt þīn is.’ Þā andswarode his hlāford him, and cwæþ: ‘Þū yfla þēow and slāwa, þū wistest þæt ič rīpe þār ič ne sāwe, and ič gadriȝe þār ič ne strēdde: hit ge·byrede þæt þū be·fæste mīn feoh myneterum, and ič nāme, þonne ič cōme, þæt mīn is, mid 105 þām gafole. A·nimāþ þæt þund æt him, and sellaþ þām þe mē þā tien pund brōhte. Witodliċe ȳlcum þāra þe hæfþ man selþ, and hē hæfþ ge·nōg; þām þe næfþ, þæt him þyncþ þæt hē hæbbe, þæt him biþ æt·brogden. And weorpaþ þone unnyttan þēowan on þā ūterran þēostru; þār biþ wōp and tōþa 110 grist-bitung.’

II

OLD TESTAMENT PIECES

A. ABRAHAM AND ISAAC

God wolde þā fandian Abrahāmes ge·hērsunnesse, and clipode his naman, and cwæþ him þus tō: ‘Nim þinne ān-cennedan sunu Isaāc, þe þū lufast, and far tō þām lande Visionis hraþe, and ge·offra hine þær uppan ānre dūne.’

5 Abrahām þā ā·rās on þāre ilcan nihte, and fērde mid twām cnapum tō þām fierlenan lande, and Isaāc samod, on assum rīdende. Þā on þone þriddan dæg, þā hie þā dūne ge·sāwon, þær þær hie tō scoldon tō of·slēanne Isaāc, þā cwæþ Abrahām tō þām twām cnapum þus: ‘Andbīdiaþ ēow hēr mid þām 10 assum sume hwile! Ic and þæt čild gāþ unc tō ge·biddenne, and wit siþpan cumaþ sōna eft tō ēow.’

Abrahām þā hēt Isaāc beran þone wudu tō þāre stōwe, and hē self bær his sveord and fyr. Isaāc þā āscode Abrahām his fæder: ‘Fæder mīn, ic āscīge hwār sēo offrung sīe; hēr is wudu 15 and fyr.’ Him andwyrde se fæder: ‘God fore·scēawaþ, mīn sunu, him self þā offrunge.’

Hie cōmon þā tō þāre stōwe þe him ge·sweotolode God; and hē þær wēfod ā·rārde on þā ealdan wisan, and þone wudu ge·lōgode swā swā hē hit wolde habban tō his suna bærnette, 20 siþpan hē of·slægen wurde. Hē ge·band þā his sunu, and his sveord ā·tēah, þæt hē hine ge·offrode on þā ealdan wisan.

Mid þām þe hē wolde þæt weorc be·ginnan, þā clipode Godes engel arodliče of heofonum: ‘Abrahām!’ Hē andwyrde sōna. Se engel him cwæþ tō: ‘Ne ā·cwele þū þæt čild, ne þine 25 hand ne ā·streče ofer his swēoran! Nū ic on·cnēow sōþliče þæt þū swiþe on·drātst God, nū þū þinne āncennedan sunu of·slēan woldest for him.’

Þā be·seah Abrahām sōna under bæc, and ge·seah þær ānne ramm be·twix þām brēmlum be þām hornum ge·hæft; and

hē ā-hefde þone ramm tō þāre offrunge, and hine þār of-snāþ 30
 ·Gode tō läce for his sunu Isaāc. Hē hēt þā þā stōwe *Dominus uidet*, þæt is ‘God ge-siehp’, and ḡiet is ge-sægd swā, *In monte Dominus uidebit*, þæt is, ‘God ge-siehp on dūne.’

Eft clipode se engel Abrahām, and cwæþ: ‘Ic sweriȝe þurh mē selfne, sægde se Ælmihtiga, nū þū noldest ārian þīnum 35
 āncennedan suna, ac þē wæs mīn eȝe māre þonne his līf, ic
 þē nū blētsiȝe, and þīnne of-spring ge-maniȝ-fielde swā swā
 steorran on heofonum, and swā swā sand-ȝeosol on sǣ; þīn
 offspring sceal āgan hiera fēonda gatu. And on þīnum sāde
 bēþ ealle þēoda ge-blētsode, for þām þe þū ge-hiersumodest 40
 minre hāse þus.’

Abrahām þā ge-ȝierde sōna tō his cnapum, and fēerde him
 hām swā mid heofonlicre blētsunge.

B. DANIEL

On Cȳres dagum cyninges wrēgdon þā Babilōniscan þone
 wītegan Daniēl, for þām þe hē tō-wearp hīra dēofol-ȝield, 45
 and cwædon ān-mōdliȝe tō þām fore-sægðan cyninge Cȳrum:
 ‘Be-tāc ūs Daniēl, þe ūrne god Bēl tō-wearp, and þone dracan
 ā-cwealde þe wē on be-liefdon. Gif þū hīne for-stentst, wē
 for-dilgiþ þē and þīnne hired.’

Þā ge-seah se cyning þæt hīe ān-mōde wāron, and niedunga 50
 þone wītegan him tō handum ā-scēaf. Hīe þā hīne ā-wurpon
 intō ānum sēaþe, on þām wāron sefon lēon, þām man sealde
 dæghwāmlīȝe twā hrīperu and twā scēap, ac him wæs þā
 of-togen ālcēs fōdan siex dagas, þæt hīe þone Godes mann
 ā-bitān scolden.

On þāre tīde wæs sum ðōper wītega on Iūdēa-lande, his
 nama wæs Abacuc, sē bær his rifterum mete tō æcere. Þā
 cōm him tō Godes engel, and cwæþ: ‘Abacuc, ber þone mete
 tō Babilōne, and sele Daniēle, sē þe sitt on þāra lēona sēaþe.’
 Abacuc andwyrde þām engle: ‘Lā lēof, ne ge-seah ic nāfre 60
 þā burg, ne ic þone sēaþ nāt.’

Þā se engel ge-lāhte hīne be þām feaxe, and hīne bær tō

Babilōne, and hine sette bufan þām sēaþe. Þā clipode sē Abacuc: ‘Þū Godes þēowa, Daniēl, nim þās lāc þe þē God 65 sende!’ Daniēl cwæþ: ‘Min Dryhten Hālend, sīe þē lof and weorþ-mynd þæt þū mē ge·mundest.’ And hē þā þære sande brēac. Witodlīce Godes engel þær-rihte mid swiftum flyhte ge·brōhte þone disc-þegn, Abacuc, þær hē hine ēr ge·nam.

Se cyning þā Cýrus on þām seofoþan dæge ēode drēorig 70 tō þāra lēona sēaþe, and inn be·seah, and efne þā Daniēl sittende wæs ge·sund-full on·middan þām lēom. Þā clipode se cyning mid miçelre stefne: ‘Māre is se God þe Daniēl on be·liefp.’ And hē þā mid þām worde hine ā·tēah of þām scrāfe, and hēt inn weorpan þā þe hine ēr for·dōn woldon. 75 Þās cyninges hās wearþ hrædliçe ge·fremed, and þās witegan ēhteras wurdon ā·scofene be·twix þām lēom, and hīe þærrihte mid grādgum ceaflum hīe ealle tō·tāron. Þā cwæþ se cyning: ‘Forhtien and on·drāden ealle eorþ-būende Daniēles God, for þām þe hē is Ā·liesend and Hālend, wyrċende tācnu and 80 wundru on heofonan and on eorþan.’

C. NEBUCHADNEZZAR

Nabochodonosor, se hāþna cyning, ge·hergode on Godes folce on Iūdēa-lande, and for hiera mān-dādum God þæt ge·þafode. 85 Þā ge·nam hē þā māþm-fatu, gyldenu and silfrenu, binnan Godes temple, and tō his lande mid him ge·lāddc. Hit ge·lamp swā swā him siþjan ā·ēode.

Æfter þisum ymb twelf mōnaþ ēode se cyning binnan his healle mid or-mātре ūp-ā·hefednesse, heriende his weorc and his miht, and cwæþ: ‘Hū, ne is þis sēo micle Babilōn, þe ic 90 self ge·timbrode tō cyne-stōle and tō þrymme, mē selfum tō wlite and wuldre, mid mīnum āgnum mægne and strengþe?’ Ac him clipode þærrihte tō swiþe egeslič stefn of heofonum, þus cweþende: ‘Þū Nabochodonosor, þin rīce ge·witt fram þē, and þū bist fram mannum ā·worpen, and þin wunung biþ 95 mid wildēorum, and þū itst gārs, swā swā oxa, sefon geār,

oþ þæt þū wite þæt se hēlica God ge-wielt manna rīcu, and
þæt hē for-ȝiefþ rīce þām þe hē wile.'

Witodlīcē on þāre ilēan tīde wæs þeos spræc ge-fylled ofer Nabochodonosor, and hē arn tō wuda, and wunode mid wildēorum, leofode be gærse, swā swā nieten, oþ þæt his feax 100 wēox swā swā wif-manna, and his næglas swā swā earnes clawa.

Eft siþpan him for-ȝeaf se ælmihtiga Wealdend his ge-witt, and hē cwæþ: 'Ic Nabochodonosor ā-hōf mīn ēagan ūt tō heofonum, and mīn andgiet mē wearþ for-ȝiefen, and ic þā blētsode þone hīehstan God, and ic herede and wuldrode þone 105 þe leofaþ on ēcnesse, for þām þe his miht is ēcc, and his rīce stent on mægþe and on mægþe. Ealle eorþbūende sind tō nāhte ge-tealde on his wiþ-metennesse. Æfter his willan hē dēþ ȝagþer ge on heofonan ge on eorþan, and nis nān þing þe his mihte wiþ-stande, oþþe him tō cweþe: "Hwȳ dēst þū swā?" On 110 þāre tīde mīn andgiet ge-wende tō mē, and ic be-cōm tō weorþmynde mīnes cyne-rīces, and mīn mennisce hīw mē be-cōm. Mīne witan mē sōhton, and mīn mārþu wearþ ge-ēacnod. Nū cornostlīcē ic mærsige and wuldriȝe þone heofonlican Cyning, for þām þe eall his weorc sind sōþ, and his wegas riht- 115 wīsc, and hē mæg ge-ēaþ-mēdan þā þe on mōdīgnesse faraþ.'

þus ge-ēaþmēdde se ælmihtiga God þone mōdigan cyning Nabochodonosor.

III

SAMSON

An man wæs eardiende on Israhēla þeode, Manuē ge·hāten,
of þære mægþe Dan. His wif wæs untiemende, and hie wuno-
don būtan cīlde. Him cōm þā gangende tō Godes engel, and
cwæþ þæt hie scolden habban sunu him ge·mānne: ‘Sē biþ
5 Gode hālig fram his cīld-hāde; and man ne mōt hine efsian
oþþe be·scieran, ne hē ealu ne drince nāfre oþþe wīn, ne nāht
fūles ne þicge; for þām þe hē on·gīnþ tō ā·liesenne his folc,
Israhēla þeode, of Philistēa þeowte.’

Hēo ā·cende þā sunu, swā swā hiere sægde se engel, and
10 hēt hine Samson; and hē swiþe wēox, and God hine blētsode,
and Godes gāst wæs on him. He wearþ þā mihtig on miēlre
strengþe, swā þæt hē ge·lāhte āne lēon be wege, þe hine
ā·bitan wolde, and tō·brægd hie tō styccum, swelē hē tō·tāre
sum ēaþelic tiċċen.

15 Hē be·gann þā tō winnenne wiþ þā Philistēos, and hiera fela
of·slōg and tō scame tūcode, þeah þe hie anweald hæfdon ofer
his lēode. Þā fērdon þā Philistēi forþ æfter Samsone, and hēton
his lēode þæt hie hine ā·gēafen tō hiera anwealde, þæt hie
wrecan mihten hiera tēon-rādenne mid tintregum on him.

20 Hie þā hine ge·bunden mid twām bæstenum rāpum and hine
ge·læddon tō þām folce. And þā Philistēiscan þæs fægnodon
swiþe; urning him tō·gēanes ealle hlýdende, woldon hine tintre-
gian for hiera tēonrādenne. Þā tō·brægd Samson bēgen his
earmas, þæt þā rāpas tō·burston þe hē mid ge·bunden wæs.

25 And hē ge·lāhte þā sōna sumes assan cinn-bān þe hē þær
funde, and ge·feah wiþ hie, and of·slōg ān þūsend mid þæs
assan cinnbāne, and cwæþ tō him selfum: ‘Ic of·slōg witodliċe
ān þūsend wera mid þæs assan cinnbāne.’ Hē wearþ þā swiþe
of·þyrist for þām wundorlican sleȝe, and bæd þone heofonlican
30 God þæt hē him ā·sende drincan, for þām þe on þære
nēawiste næs nān wæter-scipe. Þā arn of þām cinnbāne, of

ānum tēþ, wæter; and Samson þā dranc, and his Dryhtne ·þancode.

Æfter þisum hē fēnde tō Philistēa lande, intō ānre byriġ on hiera anwealde, Gaza ġe·hāten. And hīc þas fægnodon; 35 be·setton þā þæt hūs þe hē inne wunode; woldon hine ġe·niman mid þām þe hē ut ēode on āerne-mergen, and hine of·slēan. Hwæt þā Samson hiera sierwunga under·geat; and ā·rās on midre nihte tō·middes his fēondum, and ġe·nam þā burg-gatu, and ġe·bær on his hrycge mid þām postum, swā swā hie 40 be·locenu wāron, up tō ānre dūne tō ufeweardum þām cnolle; and ēode him swā or-sorg of hiera ġe·sihþum.

Hine be·swāc swā·þeah siþhan ān wif, Dalila ġe·hāten, of þām hāþnan folce, swā þæt hē hiere sægde, þurh hiere swic-dōm be·pæht, on hwām his strengþu wæs and his wundorliċe 45 miht. Þā hāþnan Philistēi be·hēton hiere sceattas wiþ þām þe hēo be·swice Samson þone strangan. Þā āscode hēo hine ġeorne mid hiere Ȱlæćunge on hwām his miht wāre; and hē hiere andwyrde: ‘Gif ic bēo ġe·bunden mid seofon rāpum, of sinum ġe·worhte, sōna ic bēo ġe·wield.’ Þæt swicole wif þā 50 be·geat þā seofon rāpas, and hē þurh sierwunge swā wearþ ġe·bunden. And him man cýdde þæt þær cōmon his fiend. Þā tō·bræc hē sōna þā rāpas, swā swā hefel·þrādas; and þæt wif nyste on hwām his miht wæs. Hē wearþ eft ġe·bunden mid eall-niƿum rāpum; and hē þā tō·bræc, swā swā þā ጀpre. 55

Hēo·lē·swāc hine swā·þeah, þæt hē hiere sægde æt nīehstan: ‘Ic eom Gode ġe·hālgod fram mīnum cildhāde; and ic næs nāfre ġe·efsod, ne nāfre be·scoren; and gif ic bēo be·scoren, þonne bēo ic unmihtiġ, ḥþrum mannum ġe·līc.’ And hēo lēt þā swā. 60

Hēo þā on sumum dæġe, þā þā hē on slāpe læġ, for·ċearf his seofon loccas, and ā·weahte hine siþhan. Þā wæs hē swā unmihtiġ swā swā ḥþre menn. And þā Philistēi ġe·fēngon hine sōna, swā swā hēo hine be·lāwde, and ġe·lāddon hine on·weġ; and hēo hæfde þone sceatt, swā swā him ġe·wearþ. 65

Hie þā hine ā·blendon, and ġe·bundenne lāddon on heardum racen-tēagum hām tō hiera byriġ, and on cwearterne be·lucon

tō langre fierste: hēton hine grindan æt hiera hand-cweorne.
 þā wēoxon his loccas and his miht eft on him. And þā Philistēi
 70 full bliþe wāron: þancodon hiera gode, Dagon ȝe-hāten,
 swelcē hie þurh his fultum hiera fēond ȝe-wielden.

þā Philistēi þā micle fcorme ȝe-worhton, and ȝe-samnodon
 hīe on sumre ūp-flōra, ealle þā hēafod-menn and ēac swelcē
 wif-menn, þrēo þūsend manna on miçelre blisse. And þā þā
 75 hīc bliþost wāron, þā bādon hīe sumē þæt Samson mōste him
 macian sum gamen; and hīne man sōna ȝe-fette mid swīþlicre
 wāfunge, and hēton hīne standan be-twix twām stānenum
 swēorum. On þām twām swēorum stōd þæt hūs call ȝe-worht.
 And Samson þā plegode swīþe him æt-foran; and ȝe-lāhte þā
 80 swēoras mid swīþlicre mihte, and slōg hīe tō-gædre þæt hīe
 sōna tō-burston; and þæt hūs þā ā-fēoll call, þām folce tō
 dēaþe, and Samson forþ mid, swā þæt hē micle mā on his
 dēaþe ā-cwealde þonne he ēr cwic dyde.

IV

FROM THE CHRONICLE

Anno 449. Hēr Martiānus and Valentīnus on·fēngon rīce, and rīcsōdon scofon winter. And on hiera dagum Hengest and Horsa, fram Wyrtgeorne ge·lapode, Bretta cyninge, ge·sōhton Bretene on þām stede þe is ge·nemned Ypwines-flēot, ærest Brettum tō fultume, ac hie eft on hie fuhton.

5

Se cyning hēt hie feohtan on·gēan Peohtas; and hie swā dydon, and siġe hæfdon swā hwār swā hie cōmon. Hie þā sendon tō Angle, and hēton him sendan māran fultum; and hēton him seccan Bret-wēala nāhtnesse and þās landes cysta. Hie þā sendon him māran fultum. Þā cōmon þā menn of 10 þrim māġþum Germānie: of Eald-seaxum, of Englum, of Īotum.

Of Īotum cōmon Cant-ware and Wiht-ware—þæt is sēo māġþ þe nū eardaþ on Wilt—and þæt cynn on West-seaxum þe man nū ḡiet hātt ‘Īotena cynn’. Of Eald-seaxum cōmon 15 Ēast-seaxe and Sūp-seaxe and West-seaxe. Of Angle cōmon—sē a siƿpan stōd wēste be·twix Īotum and Seaxum—Ēast-ngle, Middel-ngle, Mierē, and ealle Norþ-hymbre.

455. Hēr Hengest and Horsa fuhton wiþ Wyrtgeorne þām cyninge in þāre stōwe þe is ge·cweden Æḡles-þrep; and his 20 brōþor Horsan man of·slōg. And æfter þām Hengest fēng to rīce, and Æsc his sunu.

457. Hēr Hengest and Æsc fuhton wiþ Brettas in þāre stōwe þe is ge·cweden Crecgan-ford, and þār of·slōgon fēower þūsend wera. And þā Brettas þā for·lēton Cent-land, and mid micle 25 ege flugon tō Lunden-byriȝ.

473. Hēr Hengest and Æsc ge·fuhton wiþ Wēlas, and ge·nāmon unārīmedlicu here·rēaf, and þā Wēlas flugon þā Englē swā swā fȳr.

495. Hēr cōmon twēgen ealdor-menn on Bretene, Cerdic 30 and Cynrīc his sunu, mid fif scipum, in þone stede þe is

ge·cweden Cerdices-ōra; and þy ilcan dæge ge·fuhton wiþ Wēalum.

501. Hēr cōm Port on Bretene, and his twēgen suna Bieda
35 and Mægla, mid twām scipum, on þāre stōwe þe is ge·cweden
Portes-mūþa; and of·slōgon ānne ȿeongne Brettiscne mannan,
swilþe æþclne.

514. Hēr cōmon West-seaxe in Bretene, mid þrim scipum,
in þā stōwe þe is ge·cweden Cerdices-ōra; and Stuf and
40 Wihtgār fuhton wiþ Brettas and hīe ge·fliemdon.

519. Hēr Cerdic and Cynric West-seaxna rīce on·fēngon,
and þy ilcan ȿēare hīe fuhton wiþ Brettas þār man nū nemneþ
Cerdices-ford; and siþpan rīcsodon West-seaxna cyne-bearn
of þām dæge.

45 565. Hēr fēng Æþelbryht tō Cantwara rīce, and hēold þrēo
and fiftiȝ wintra. On his dagum sende Gregorius ūs fulluht,
and Columba mæsse-prēost cōm tō Peohatum and hīe ge·cierde
to Cr̄istes ge·lēafan; þæt sind þonne wearderas be norþum
mōrum. And hiera cyning him ge·sealde þæt ieg-land þe man
50 Ii nemneþ. Þār sē Columba ge·timbrode mynster, and hē þār
wæs abbot twā and þritiȝ wintra, and þār forþ·fērde þā hē
wæs seofon and hund-seofontiȝ wintra. Þā stōwe habbaþ
giet his ierfe-numan. Sūþ-peohtas wāron Ȣr ge·fullode of
Ninia biscope, sē wæs on Rōme ge·lāred.

55 787. Hēr nam Beorhtrīc cyning Offan dohtor Eadburge.
And on his dagum cōmon Ȣrest þrēo scipu; and þā se ge·rēfa
þār·tō rād, and hīe wolde drifan tō þās cyninges tūne, þy
hē nyste hwæt hīe wāron; and hīne man of·slōg. Þæt wāron
þā Ȣrestan scipu Deniscra manna þe Angel-cynnes land ge-
60 sōhton.

836. Hēr Ecgbryht cyning forþ·fērde. And hīne hæfde Ȣr
Offa Miercna cyning and Beorhtrīc West-seaxna cyning
ā·fliemed þrēo ȿēar of Angelcynnes lande on Franc-land Ȣr hē
cyning wāre; and þy fultumode Beorhtrīc Offan þy hē hæfde
65 his dohtor him tō cwēne. And sē Ecgbryht rīcsode seofon and

þrítig wintra and seofon mōnaþ; and fēng Æþelwulf Egbryhting tō West-seaxna rīce.

851. Hēr Ćeorl ealdormann ȝe-feaht wiþ hāþne menn mid Defena-scire æt Wicgan-beorge, and þær mičel wæl ȝe-slōgon, and siȝe nāmon. And þy ilcan ȝēare Æþelstān cyning and 70 Ealhhere dux mičelne here of-slōgon æt Sand-wiċ on Cent; and nigon scipu ȝe-fēngon, and þā ðōru ȝe-fliemdon; and hāþne menn ȝerest ofer-winter sāton.

And þy ilcan ȝēare cōm fēorþe healf hund scipa on Temesc-mūpan, and brācon Cantwara-burg, and Lunden-burg, and 75 ȝe-fliemdon Beorhtwulf Miercna cyning mid his fierde; and fōron þā sūþ ofer Temese on Sūþriġe. And him ȝe-feaht wiþ Æþelwulf cyning and Æþelbeald his sunu æt Āc-lēa mid West-seaxna fierde, and þær þæt māste wæl ȝe-slōgon on hāþnum heriȝe þe wē secgan hīerdon oþ þisne andweardan dæg, and 80 þær siȝe,nāmon.

853. Hēr bæd Burgred Miercna cyning and his witan Æþelwulf cyning þæt hē him ȝe-fultumode þæt him Norþ-wēlas ȝe-hiersumode. Hē þā swā dyde, and mid fierde fōr ofer Miercē on Norþ-wēlas, and hīe him ealle ȝe-hiersume dydon. And 85 þy ilcan ȝēare sende Æþelwulf cyning Ælfred his sunu tō Rōme. Þā wæs domne Lēo pāpa on Rōme, and hē hīe tō cyninge ȝe-hālgode, and hīe him tō biscop-suna nam.

Þā þy ilcan ȝēare Ealhhere mid Cantwarum and Huda mid Sūþrigām ȝe-fuhton on Tenet wiþ hāþnum heriȝe, and ȝerest 90 siȝe nāmon; and þær wearþ maniȝ mann of-slægen and ȝādrun-cen on ȝe-hwæþere hand. And þæs ofer Ēastran ȝeaf Æþelwulf cyning his dohtor Burgrede cyninge of West-seaxum on Miercē.

855. Hēr hāþne menn ȝerest on Scēap-ieȝe ofer winter sāton. And þy ilcan ȝēare ȝe-bōcode Æþelwulf cyning tēoþan 95 dæl his landes ofer eall his rīce Gode tō lofe, and him selfum tō ēcre hālu; and þy ilcan ȝēare fērde tō Rōme mid mičelre weorþnesse, and þær wæs twelf mōnaþ wuniende, and þā him hām-weard fōr. And him þā Carl Francna cyning his dohtor ȝeaf him tō cwēne; and ȝerest þām tō his lēodum cōm, and 100 hīe þæs ȝe-fāȝene wāron. And ymb twā ȝēar þæs þe hē on

Francum cōm, hē ġe-fōr; and his līc līp æt Wintan-ċeaſtre.
And hē rīcſode nigontēoþe healf ġēar.

865. Hēr sāt hāþen here on Teneſ, and ġe-nāmon friþ wiþ
105 Cantwarum, and Cantware him feoh ġe-hēton wiþ þām friþe;
and under þām friþe and þām feoh-ġt-ħāte se here hine on
niht ūp be-stāl, and ofer-hergode ealle Cent eastewearde.

866. Hēr fēnġ Æþelred Æþelbryhtes brōþor tō West-seaxna
riče. And þy ilcan ġēare cōm mičel hēre on Angelcynnes land,
110 and winter-setl nāmon on Ēast-englum, and þār ġe-horsode
wurdon; and hē him wiþ friþ nāmon.

867. Hēr fōr se here of Ēast-englum ofer Humber-mūþan
to Eoforwic-ċeaſtre on Norþ-hymbre. And þār wās mičel
unġēþwāernes þāre þeode be-twix him selfum, and hē hāſdon
115 hēra cyning ā-worpenne Ōsbryht, and unġecyndne cyning
under-fēngon Ællan. And hē late on ġēare tō þām ġe-ċierdon
þāt hē wiþ þone here winnende wāron; and hē þēah micle
fierd ġe-gadrodon, and þone here sōhton æt Eoforwic-ċeaſtre;
and on þā ċeaſtre brācon, and hē sume inne wurdon. And
120 þār wās unġemetlič wāl ġe-slāgen Norþanhymbra, sume
binnan, sume būtan, and þā cyningas bēgen of-slāgene; and
sēo lāf wiþ þone here friþ nam.

868. Hēr fōr se ilca here innan Mierče tō Snotinga-hām,
and þār wintersetl nāmon; and Burgred Mierčna cyning and
125 his witan bādon Æþelred West-seaxna cyning and Ælfred his
brōþor þāt hē him ġe-fultumoden þāt hē wiþ þone here
ġe-fuhten. And þā fērdon hē mid West-seaxna fierde innan
Mierče oþ Snotinga-hām, and þone herc þār mētton on þām
ġe-weorce; and þār nān hefelič ġe-feoht ne wearþ, and Mierče
130 friþ nāmon wiþ þone here.

885. Hēr tō-dālde se fore-spreccena here on tū, ȳþer dāl
ēast, ȳþer dāl tō Hrofes-ċeaſtre; and ymb-sāton þā ċeaſtre,
and worhton ȳþer fæsten ymb hē selfe. And hē þēah þā
ċeaſtre ā-weredon oþ þāt Ælfred cōm ūtan mid fierde. Þā
135 ēode se here tō hēra scipum, and for-lēt þāt ġe-weorc; and
hē wurdon þār be-horsode, and sōna þy ilcan sumere ofer sā
ġe-witon.

And þy ilcan gēare sende Ælfred cyning scip-here on Eastengle. Sōna swā hie cōmon on Stūre-mūþan, þā mētton hie siextiene scipu wīcinga, and wiþ þā gē-fuhton, and þā scipu 140 eall gē-rāhton, and þā menn of-slōgon. Þā hie þā hāmweard wendon mid þāre here-hýþe, þā mētton hie miçelne sciphire wīcinga, and þā wiþ þā gē-fuhton þy ilcan dæge, and þā Deniscan āhton siȝe.

886. Hēr fōr se here eft west þe ēr ēast gē-lende, and þā 145 ūp on Siȝene, and þār wintersetl nāmon. Þy ilcan gēare gē-sette Ælfred cyning Lunden-burg, and him eall Angelcynn tō cierde, þæt būtan Deniscra manna hæft-niede wæs; and hē þā be-fæste þā burg Æþelrede ealdormenn tō healdenne.

V

PREFACES BY ÆLFRIC

A. TO HIS LATIN GRAMMAR

Ic Ælfrič wolde þās lýtlan bōc ā·wendan tō Engliscum ge·reorde
of þām stæf-cræfte þe is ge·hāten *grammatica*, siþian ic þā
twā bēc ā·wende on hund·eahtatigum spellum, for þām þe
stæfcræft is sēo cæg þe þāra bōca andgiet un·lýcþ; and ic þōhte
5 þæt þeos bōc mihte fremian geongum cildum tō anginne þæs
cræftes, oþ þæt hie tō māran andgiete be·cumen.

Ælcum menn ge·byreþ, þe æniȝne gōdne cræft hæfþ, þæt
hē þone dō nytne ȿþrum mannum, and be·fæste þæt pund þe
him God be·fæste sumum ȿþrum menn, þæt Godes feoh ne
10 æt·licge and hē bēo lýpre þēowa ge·hāten and bēo ge·bunden
and ge·worpen in-tō þeostrum, swā swā þæt hālgē god-spell
sægþ. Geongum mannum ge·dafehaþ þæt hie leornien sumne
wis·dōm, and þām ealdum ge·dafenaþ þæt hie tācen sum
ge·rād hiera geonglingum, for þām þe þurh lāre biþ se ge·lēafa
15 ge·healden. And ælc mann þe wisdōm lufaþ biþ ge·sælig, and
sē þe nāwþer nyle ne leornian ne tācan, gif hē mæg, þonne
ā·cōlaþ his andgiet fram þāre hālgan lāre, and hē ge·witt swā
lýtlum and lýtlum fram Gode.

Hwanon sculon cuman wīse lārēowas on Godes folce, būtan
20 hie on geogoþe leornien? And hū mæg se ge·lēafa bēon forþ-
genge gif sēo lār and þā lārēowas ā·tēoriaþ? Is nū for þy Godes
þēowum and mynster-mannum georne tō wearниenne þæt sēo
hālgē lār on ūrum dagum ne ā·cōlige oþþe ā·tēorige, swā swā
hit wæs ge·dōn on Angelcynne nū for ānum fēam gēarum, swā
25 þæt nān Englisc prēost ne cūþe dihton oþþe ā·smēagan ānne
pistol on Læden, oþ þæt Dūnstān ærce-biscop and Æþelwold
biscop eft þā lāre on munuc-lifum ā·rārdon. Ne cweþe ic nā
for þy þæt þeos bōc mæge miclum tō lāre fremian, ac hēo biþ
swā·þeah sum anginn tō ȿþrum ge·reorde, gif hēo hwām licap.

IC bidde nū on Godes naman, gif hwā þās bōc ā·wrītan wile, 30
 þæt hē hie ȝe·rihte wel be þāre bȳsne; for þām þe ic nāh
 ȝe·weald þāh hie hwā tō wō ȝe·bringe þurh lēase wrīteras, and
 hit biþ þonne his pleoh, nā min. Mičel yfel dēþ se unwrītere,
 gif he nyle his wōh ȝe·rihtan.

• B. TO HIS TRANSLATION OF GENESIS

Ælfrič munuc grētt Æþelweard ealdormann ēaþ-mōdlīce. 35
 bāde mē, lēof, þæt ic scolde þē ā·wendan of Lædene on Englisc
 þā bōc *Genesis*. Þā þūhte mē hefig·tieme þē tō tīþienne þās,
 and þū cwāde þā þæt ic ne þorfte nā māre ā·wendan þāre bēc
 būtan tō Isaāce, Abrahāmes suna, for þām þe sum Ȥper mann
 þē hæfde ā·wend fram Isaāce þā bōc oþ ende. Nū þyncþ mē, 40
 lēof, þæt þæt weorc is swīþe plēolic mē oþþe ȝengum menn tō
 under-be·ginnenne, for þām þe ic on·drāde, gif sum dysig
 mann þās bōc rāett oþþe rādan ȝe·hierþ, þæt hē wile wēnan
 þæt hē mote libban nū on þāre nīwan æ swā swā þā ealdan
 fæderas leofodon þā on þāre tide Ȣr þām þe sēo ealde æ ȝe·sett 45
 wāre, oþþe swā swā menn leofodon under Moyses æ. Hwilum
 ic wiste þæt sum mæsse-prēost, sē þe min magister wæs on
 þām timan, hæfde þā bōc *Genesis*, and hē cūþe be dāle Læden
 under·standan. Þā cwæþ hē be þām hēah-fædere Iacobe þæt
 hē hæfde fēower wif, twā ȝe·sweostor and hiera twā þīnena. 50
 Full sōþ hē sægde, ac hē nyste, ne ic þā gīet, hū mičel tō·dāl
 is be·twix þāre ealdan æ and þāre nīwan.

Gif hwā wile nū swā libban, æfter Cr̄istes tō·cyme, swā swā
 menn leofodon Ȣr Moyses æ oþþe under Moyses æ, ne biþ sē
 mann nā cristen, ne hē furþum wierþe ne biþ þæt him ȝenig 55
 cristen mann mid ete. Þā ungelārdan prēostas, gif hie hwat
 lȳtles under·standaþ of þām Læden-bōcum, þonne þyncþ him
 sōna þæt hie magon māre lārēowas bēon, ac hie ne cunnon
 swā·þāh þæt gāstliče andgīet þār·tō, and hū sēo ealde æ wæs
 ȝe·tācnung tō·weardra þīngas, oþþe hū sēo niwe ȝe·cȳþnes 60
 æfter Cr̄istes menniscnesse wæs ȝe·fyllednes ealra þāra þīngas
 þe sēo ealde ȝe·cȳþnes ȝe·tācnode tōwearde be Cr̄iste and be

his ge·corenum. Prēostas sindon ge·sette tō lārēowum þām lāwedan folce. Nū ge·dafenode him þæt hie cūþen þā ealdan 65 æ gāstliče under·standan, and hwæt Crīst self tāhte and his apostolas on þāre niwan ge·cȳþnesse, þæt hie mihten þām folce wel wissian tō Godes ge·lēafan, and wel bȳsnian tō gōdum weorcum.

Nū is sēo forc-sægde bōc on manigum stōwum swiþe nearo-70 liče ge·sett, and þeah swiþe dēoplīce on þām gāstlican andgīete; and hēo is swā ge·ende-byrd swā swā God self hīc ge·dihte þām writere Moyse, and wē ne durron nā māre ā·writan on Englisc þonne þæt Læden hæfþ, ne þā endebyrdnesse ā·wendan, būtan þām ānum, þæt þæt Læden and þæt Englisc nabbaþ nā āne 75 wisan on þāre spræče fadunge. Æfre sē þe ā·went oþþe sē þe tācþ of Lædene on Englisc, æfre hē sceal ge·fadian hit swā þæt þæt Englisc hæbbe his āgene wisan, elles hit biþ swiþe ge·dwolsum tō rādenne þām þe þæs Lædenes wisan ne cann. Is ēac tō witenne þæt sume ge·dwol-menn wāeron þe woldon 80 ā·weorpan þā ealdan æ, and sume woldon habban þā ealdan and ā·weorpan þā niwan, swā swā þā fūdēiscan dōþ; ac Crīst self and his apostolas ūs tāhton ægþer tō healdenne, þā ealdan gāstliče and þā niwan sōþliče mid weorcum. God ge·scōp ūs twā ēagan and twā ēaran, twā nos-þýrlu and twēgen weleras, 85 twā handa and twēgen fēt, and hē wolde ēac habban twā ge·cȳþnessa on þisse worulde ge·sett, þā ealdan and þā niwan; for þām þe hē dēþ swā swā hine selfne ge·wierþ, anu hē nānne rād-boran næfþ, ne nān mann ne þearf him cweþan tō: ‘Hwȳ dēst þū swā?’ Wē sculon ā·wendan ūrne willan tō his ge·set-90 nessum, and wē ne magon ge·bīegan his ge·setnessa tō ūrum lustum.

Ic cweþe nū þæt ic ne dearr ne ic nylle nāne bōc æfter þisse of Lædene on Englisc ā·wendan; and ic bidde þē, lēof ealdormann, þæt þū mē þæs nā leng ne bidde, þy·lās þe ic bēo þē 95 ungchiersum, oþþe lēas gīf ic dō. God þē sie milde ā on ēcnesse.

VI

KING EDMUND

Sum swiþe ge-læred munuc cōm sūþan ofer sā fram sancte Benedictes stōwe, on Æþelredes cyninges dæge, tō Dūnstāne ærce-biscope, þrim gēarum ār hē forþ-ferde, and se munuc hātte Abbo. Þā wurdon hie æt spræcē, oþ þæt Dūnstān reahte be sancte Ēadmunde, swā swā Ēadmundes sweord-bora hit 5 reahte Æþelstānc cyninge, þā þā Dūnstān geong mann wæs, and se sweordbora wæs for-ealdod mann. Þā ge-sette se munuc ealle þā ge-recednesse on ānre bēc, and eft, þā þā sēo bōc cōm tō ūs, binnan fēam gēarum, þā ā-wendon wē hit on Englisc, swā swā hit hēr-æfter stent. Se munuc þā Abbo binnan twām 10 gēarum ge-wende hām tō his mynstre, and wearþ sōna tō abbode ge-sett on þām ilcan mynstre.

Ēadmund se ēadiga, Ēast-engla cyning, wæs snotor and weorþ-full, and weorþode simle mid æþelum þēawum þone 15 ælmihtigan God. Hē wæs ēaþ-mōd and ge-þungen, and swā ān-rād þurh-wunode þæt hē nolde ā-būgan tō bismere-fullum leahtrum, ne on nāwþre healfe hē ne ā-hiilde his þēawas, ac wæs simle ge-myndig þērc sōþan lāre: ‘Gif þū eart tō heafodmenn ge-sett, ne ā-hefe þū þē, ac bēo be-twix mannum swā 20 swā ān-mānn of him.’ Hē wæs cystig wādlum and widewum swā swā fæder, and mid wel-willendnesse ge-wissode his folc simle tō riht-wisnesse, and þām rēþum stierde, and ge-sælig-līce leofode on sōþum ge-lēafan.

Hit ge-lamp þā æt nīhstan þæt þā Deniscan lēode fērdon mid scip-here, hergiende and slēande wide geond land, swā 25 swā hiera ge-wuna is. On þām flotan wāron þā fyrimestan hēafodmenn, Hinguar and Hubba, ge-ānlāhte þurh dēosol, and hie on Norþymbra-lande ge-lendon mid æscum, and ā-wēston þæt land, and þā lēode of-slōgon. Þā ge-wende Hinguar ēast mid his scipum, and Hubba be-lāf on Norþymbra-lande, 30 ge-wunnenum siȝe mid wæl-hrēownesse. Hinguar þā be-cōm

tō East-englum rōwende on þām gēare þe Ælfred æþeling ān
and twentig gēara wæs, sē þe West-seaxna cyning siþþan wearþ
mære. And se fore-sægda Hinguar færliče, swā swā wulf, on
35 land be-stealcode, and þā lēode slōg, weras and wif and þā
unwittigan čild, and tō bismere tūcode þā bile-witan cristenan.
Hē sende þā sōna siþþan tō þām cyninge bēotlič ērende, þæt
hē ā-būgan scolde tō his mann-rādenne, gif hē rōhte his
fēores. Se ērend-raca cōm þā tō Æadmunde cyninge, and
40 Hinguares ērende him arodliče ā-bēad: ‘Hinguar ūre cyning,
cēne and siȝefæst on sāe and on lande, hæfþ fela lēoda ge-weald,
and cōm nū mid fierde færliče hēr tō lande, þæt hē hēr
winter-setl mid his werode hæbbe. Nū hātt hē þē dāelan
þīne dieglan gold-hordas and þinra ieldrena ge-strēon arodliče
45 wiþ hine, and þū bēo his under-cyning, gif þū cwic bēon
wilt, for þām þe þū næfst þā miht þæt þū mæge him wiþ-stan-
dan.’

Hwæt þā Æadmund cyning clipode ānne biscop þe him þā
ge-hendost wæs, and wiþ hine smēade hū hē þām rēpan Hin-
50 guare andwyrdan scolde. Þā forhtode se biscop for þām fær-
lican ge-limpe, and for þās cyninges līfe, and cwæþ þæt him
rād þūhte þæt hē tō þām ge-buge þe him bēad Hinguar. Þā
swigode se cyning, and be-seah tō þāre eorþan, and cwæþ þā
æt nīehstan cyneliče him tō: ‘Ēalā þū biscop, tō bismere sind
55 ge-tāwode þās earman land-lēode, and mē nū lēofre wāre þæt
iċ on ge-feohte fēolle, wiþ þām þe min folc mōste hīerā eardes
brūcan.’ And se biscop cwæþ: ‘Ēalā þū lēofa cyning, þīn folc
liþ of-slægen, and þū næfst þone fultum þæt þū feohtan mæge,
and þās flot-menn cumaþ, and þē cwicne ge-bindaþ, būtan þū
60 mid flēame þīnum fēore ge-beorge, oþþe þū þē swā ge-beorge
þæt þū būge tō him.’ Þā cwæþ Æadmund cyning, swā swā hē
full cēne wæs: ‘þās iċ ge-wilniġe and ge-wysce mid mōde, þæt
iċ āna ne be-life æfter mīnum lēofum þēgnum, þe on hīera
bedde wurdon mid bearnum and wifum færliče of-slægene
65 fram þīssum flotmannum. Næs mē nāfre ge-wunelič þæt iċ
worhte flēames, ac iċ wolde swīþor sweltan, gif iċ þorfte, for
mīnum āgnum earde, and se ælmihtiga God wāt þæt iċ nylle

ā·būgan fram his bī-gengum āfre, ne fram his sōpan lufe,
swelte ic, libbe ic.'

Æfter þissem wordum hē ge·wende tō þām ārendracan þe 70
Hinguar him tō sende, and sægde him unforht: 'Witodliče þū
wāre wierþe sleghs nū, ac ic nylle ā·fylan on þinum fūlum
blōde mine clānan handa, for þām þe ic Criste folgiȝe, þe ū
swā ge·bysnode; and ic bliþelicē wille bēon of·slægen purh ēow,
ȝif hit swā God fore·scēawaþ. Far nū swiþe hraþe, and seȝe 75
þinum rēpan hlāforde: "Ne ā·bȳhþ nāfre Ēadmund Hinguare
on life, hāþnum here-togan, būtan hē tō Hālende Criste ārest
mid ge·lēafan on þissem lande ge·būge."'

Þā ge·wende se ārendraca arodliče on·weg, and ge·mētte be
weȝe þone wālhrēowan Hinguar mid ealre his fierde fūse tō 80
Ēadmunde, and sægde þām ārlēasan hū him ge·andwyrd wās.
Hinguar þā be·bēad mid bieldu þām sciphere þæt hie þās
cyninges ānes ealle cēpan scolden, þe his hāse for·seah, and
hine sōna bindan.

Hwæt þā Ēadmund cyning, mid þām þe Hinguar cōm, stōd 85
innan his healle, þās Hālendes ge·myndig, and ā·wearp his
wāpnu; wolde ge·efenlēcan Cristes ge·bysnungum, þe for·bēad
Petre mid wāpnum tō winnenne wiþ þā wālhrēowan Iūdēiscan.
Hwæt þā ārlēasan þā Ēadmund ge·bundon, and ge·bismrodon
huxliče, and bēoton mid sāglum, and swā sippian lāddon þone 90
ge·lēaffullan cyning tō ānum eorþ-fæstum trēowe, and tieȝdon
hine þār·tō mid heardum bendum, and hine eft swungon
langliče mid swipum; and hē simle clipode be·twix þām
swinglum mid sōþum ge·lēafan tō Hālende Criste; and þā
hāþnan þā for his ge·lēafan wurdon wōdlīce ierre, for þām 95
þe hē clipode Crist him tō fultume. Hie scuton þā mid gafe·
lucum, swelce him tō gamenes, tō, oþ þæt hē eall wās be·sett
mid hiera scotungum, swelce īles byrstā, swā swā Sebastiānus
wās. Þā ge·seah Hinguar, se ārlēasa flotmann, þæt se æþela
cyning nolde Criste wiþ·sacan, ac mid ānrādum ge·lēafan hine 100
āfre clipode. Hēt hine þā be·hāfdian, and þā hāþnan swā
dydon. Be·twix þām þe hē clipode tō Criste þā giet, þā tugon
þā hāþnan þone hālgan tō sleȝe, and mid ānum swenȝe slōgon

him of þæt hēafod, and his sāwol siþode ȝe·sālig tō Crīste.
 105 Þār wæs sum mann ȝe·hende, ȝe·healden þurh God be·hÿdd
 þām hāþnum, þe þis ȝe·hierde eall, and hit eft sægde, swā
 swā wē hit secgaþ hēr.

Hwæt þā se flot-here fērde eft tō scipe, and be·hÿddon þæt
 hēafod þæs hālgan Ēdmundes on þām piccum brēmlum, þæt
 110 hit be·byrged ne wurde. Þā æfter fierste, siþjan hie ȝ-farene
 wāeron, cōm þæt land-folc tō, þe þār tō lāfe wæs þā, þār hiera
 hlāfordes lič lāg būtan hēafde, and wurdon swiþe sārge for his
 sleȝe on mōde, and hūru þæt hie næfdon þæt hēafod tō þām
 bodiȝe. Þā sægde se scēawere, þe hit ȝer ȝe·seah, þæt þā flot-
 115 menn hæfdon þæt hēafod mid him; and wæs him ȝe·þūht, swā
 swā hit wæs full sōþ, þæt hie be·hÿdden þæt hēafod on þām
 holte for·hwega.

Hie ȝodon þā calle endemes tō þām wuda, sēcende ȝe·hwār,
 ȝeond þýflas and brēmlas, gif hie ȝ-hwār mihten ȝe·mētan
 120 þæt hēafod. Wæs ȝac miçel wundor þæt ȝn wulf wearþ ȝ-send,
 þurh Godes wissunge, tō be·werienne þæt hēafod wiþ þā ȳþru
 dēor ofer dæg and niht. Hie ȝodon þā sēcende and simle
 clipiende, swā swā hit ȝe·wuneliç is þām þe on wuda gāþ oft:
 ‘Hwār eart þū nū, ȝe·fēra?’ And him andwyrde þæt hēafod:
 125 ‘Hēr, hēr, hēr’; and swā ȝe·lōme clipode andswariende him
 eallum, swā oft swā hiera ȝeniȝ clipode, oþ þæt hie calle be-
 ·cōmon þurh þā clipunge him tō. Þā lāg se grāga wulf þe
 be·wiste þæt hēafod, and mid his twām fōtum hāfde þæt
 hēafod be·clypped, grādiȝ and hungrīȝ, and for Gode ne dorste
 130 þæs hēafdes on·bierȝan, ac hēold hit wiþ dēor. Þā wurdon hie
 of·wundrode þæs wulfes hierd-rādenne, and þæt hālȝe hēafod
 hām feredon mid him, þanciende þām Ālmihtigan ealra his
 wundra. Ac se wulf folgode forþ mid þām hēafde, oþ þæt hie
 tō tūne cōmon, swelcē hē tam wāre, and ȝe·wende eft siþjan
 135 tō wuda on·ȝēan.

Þā landlēode þā siþjan leȝdon þæt hēafod tō þām hālgan
 bodiȝe, and be·byrigdon hine swā hie sēlest mihton on swelcre
 hrædinge, and ciriçan ȝ-rāerdon sōna him on·uppan. Eft þā
 on fierste, æfter fela ȝearum, þā seo hergung ȝe·swāc, and sibb

wearþ for·giefen þām ġe·swenctan folce, þā fēngon hē tō·gædre 140
 ·and worhton āne cīričan weorþlīcē þām hālgan, for þām þe
 ġe·lōme wundru wurdon æt his byrġenne, æt þām ġe·bed-
 hūse þār hē be·byrged wæs. Hie woldon þā ferian mid folcli-
 cum weorþ-mynde þone hālgan lichaman, and lecgan innan
 þāre cīričan. Þā wæs mičel wundor þæt hē wæs eall swā ġe·hāl 145
 swelcē hē cwic wære, mid clēnum lichaman, and his swēora
 wæs ġe·hālod, þe ær wæs for·slægen, and wæs swelcē ān seolcen
 þrād ymbe his swēoran rēad, mannum tō sweotolunge hū hē
 of·slægen wæs. Ēac swelcē þā wunda, þe þā wælhrēowan hāþ-
 nan mid ġe·lōmum scotungum on his līcē macodon, wāron 150
 ġe·hāldc þurh þone heofonlican God; and he līp swā ansund
 oþ þisne andweardan dæg, andbidiende ǣristes and þæs ēcan
 wuldres. His lichama ūs cýþþ, þe līp unfor·molsnod, þæt hē
 būtan for·ligre hēr on worulde leofode, and mid clēnum līfe
 tō Crīste sīþode.

155

Sum ƿidewe wunode, Ȑswyn ġe·hāten, æt þæs hālgan byr-
 ġenne, on ġe·bedum and fæstennum manigu ġēar siþan. Sēo
 wolde efsian ǣlīcē ġēare þone sanct, and his næglas ćorfan
 sýferlīcē mid lufe, and on scrīne healdan tō hālig-dōme on
 wēofode. Þā weorþode þæt landfolc mid ġe·lēafan þone sanct, 160
 and Ȑcōdred biscoþ þearle mid giefum on golde and on seolfre,
 þām sancte tō weorþmynde.

Þā cōmon on sumnc sāl ungesälīcē þeofas eahta on ānre
 nihte tō þām ār-weorþan hālgan: woldon stelan þā māþmas
 þe menn þider brōhton, and cunnodon mid cræfte hū hē inn 165
 cuman mihten. Sum slōg mid slecke swiþe þā hæpsan, sum
 hiera mid fēolan fēolode ymb·ūtan, sum ēac under·dealf þā
 duru mid spade, sum hiera mid hlādreibolde on·lūcan þæt
 ēag·þyrel; ac hē swuncon on īdel, and earmlīcē fērdon, swā
 þæt se hālga wer hē wundorlīcē ġe·band, ǣlcne swā hē stōd 170
 strūtiende mid tōle, þæt hiera nān ne mihte þæt morþ ġe-
 ·fremman ne hē þanon ā·styrian; ac stōdon swā oþ merȝen.
 Menn þā þæs wundrodon, hū þā weargas hangodon, sum on
 hlādre, sum lēat tō ġe·delfe, and ǣlc on his weorce wæs fæste
 ġe·bunden. Hie wurdon þā ġe·brōhte tō þām biscoþe ealle, 175

and hē hēt hie hōn on hēam ġealgum ealle; ac hē nās nā
ġe-myndig hū se mild-heorta God clipode þurh his witegan
þās word þe hēr standaþ: *Eos qui ducuntur ad mortem eruere ne
cesses*, ‘Þā þe man lātt tō dēaþe ā-lies hie ūt simle.’ And ēac
180 þā hālgan canōnas ġe-hādodum for-bēðodaþ, ġe biscopum ġe
prēostum, tō bēonne ymbe þēofas, for þām þe hit ne ġe-byrcþ
þām þe bēoþ ġe-corene Gode tō þegnienne þæt hie ġe-þwār-
lācān scylen on ānges mannes dēaþe, gif hie bēoþ Dryhtnes
þegnas. Eft þā Þēodred biscop scēawode his bēc, hē siþþan
185 be-hrēowsode mid ġeōmrunge þæt hē swā rēþne dōm sette
þām ungesēlgum þēofum, and hit be-sārgode āfre oþ his lifes
ende, and þā lēode bæd ġeorne þæt hie him mid fæsten fullīce
þrīe dagas, biddende þone Ælmihtigan þæt hē him ārian
scoldē.

190 On þām lande wās sum mann, Lēofstān ġe-hāten, rīce for
worulde and unwittig for Gode. Sē rād tō þām hālgan mid
rīcetere swīþe, and hēt him æt-ēowian orgelliče swīþe þone
hālgan sanct, hwæþer hē ġe-sund wāre; ac swā hraþe swā hē
ġe-seah þās sanctes lichaman, þā ȳ-wēdde hē sōna, and wæl-
195 hrēowlīče grymetode, and earmlīče ġe-endode yflum dēaþe.
Þis is þām ġe-lič þe se ġe-lēaffulla pāpa Gregōrius sægde on his
ġe-setnesse be þām hālgan Laurentie, þe līþ on Rōme-byrig,
þæt menn woldon scēawian simle hū hē lāge, ġe gode ġe yfle;
ac God hie ġe-stilde swā þæt þār swulton on þāre scēawunge
200 āne seofon menn æt-gædre. Þā ġe-swicon þā ōþre tō scēawienne
þone martyr mid menniscum ġe-dwylde.

Fela wundra we ġe-hierdon on folclicre spræče be þām
hālgan Ēadmunde, þe wē hēr nyllaþ on ġe-write settan, ac hie
wāt ġe-hwā. On þisum hālgan is sweotol, and on swelcum
205 ōþrum, þæt God ælmihtiġ mæg þone mann ā-rāran eft on
dōmes dæg ansundne of eorþan, sē þe hielt Ēadmunde hālne
his lichaman oþ þone miclan dæg, þēah þe hē of moldan cōme.
Wierþe is seo stōw for þām weorþfullan hālgan þæt hie man
weorþige and wel ġe-lōgiġe mid clānum Godes þēowum tō
210 Cr̄istes þēow-dōme; for þām þe se hālga is mārra þonne menn
magon ā-smēaġan. Nis Angel-cynn be-dæled Dryhtnes hāl-

gena, þonne on Engla-lande licgaþ swelcē hālgan swelcē þes
hālga cyning, and Cūþberht se ēadiga, and sancte Æþelþrýþ
on Ēlīg, and ēac hiere sweostor, ansunde on lichaman, ge-lēafan
tō trymminge. Sind ēac fela ȿþre on Angelcynne hālgan, þe 215
fela wundra wyrcaþ, swā swā hit wide is cūþ, þām Ælmihtigan
tō lofe, þe hie on ge-liefdon. Crīst ge-sweotolaþ mannum þurh
his māran hālgan þæt hē is ælmihtiġ God þe macaþ swelc
wundru, þeah þe þā carman Iūdēi hine eallunga wiþ-sōcen,
for þām þe hie sind ā-wiergde, swā swā hie wyseton him selfum. 220
Ne bēoþ nān wundru ge-worht æt hiera byrgennum, for þām
þe hie ne ge-liefaþ on þone lifiandan Crīst; ac Crīst ge-sweotolaþ
mannum hwār se sōþa ge-lēafa is, þonne hē swelc wundru
wyrceþ þurh his hālgan wide geond þās eorþan. Þæs him sīe
wuldor ā mid his hefonlican Fæder and þām Hālgan Gāste, 225
ā būtan ende. Amen.

VII

FROM THE OLD ENGLISH TRANSLATION
OF BEDE'S *ECCLESIASTICAL HISTORY*

A. A DESCRIPTION OF BRITAIN

Breten is gār-secges īcg-land, þæt wæs ġeo ġeāra Albion hāten : is ġe-sett be-twix norþ-dæle and west-dæle, Germānie and Gallie and Hispānie, þām māstum dælum Eurōpe, micle fæce on-ġēan. Þæt is norþ eahta hund mila lang, and twā hund mila 5 brād. Hit hæfþ fram sūþ-dæle þā māgþe on-ġēan þe man hætt Gallia Belgica. Hit is welig, þis īcgland, on wæstmum and on trēowum missenlicra cynna, and hit is ġe-scrēpe on lāswe scēapa and nēata, and on sumum stōwum wīn-ġeardas grōwaþ. Swelcē ēac þeos eorþe is berende missenlicra fugla and sā-
10 wihta, and fisc-wiellum wæterum and wiell-ġe·springum; and hēr bēoþ oft fangene sēolas and hranas and mere-swīn, and hēr bēoþ oft numene missenlicra cynna weoloc-sciella and muscular, and on þām bēoþ oft ġe·mētte þā betstan mere-grotan ælcēs hiwes. And hēr bēoþ swīþe ġe·nyhtsume weolocas,
15 of þām biþ ġe·worht se weoloc-rēada telg, þone ne mæg ne sunne blæcan, ne ne reġen wierdan ; ac swā hē biþ ieldra, swā hē fægerra biþ. Hit hæfþ ēac, þis land, sealt-sēaþas, and hit hæfþ hāt wæter, and hāt baþu, ælcre ieldu and hāde þurh tō·dæleda stōwa ġe·scrēpe. Swelcē hit is ēac berende on wecga ōrum,
20 āres and īsernes, lēades and scolfres.

Wæs þis īcgland ēac ġeo ġe·weorþod mid þām æþelestum cēastrum, ānes wana þritigum, þā þe wāron mid weallum and torrum and gatum and þām trumestum locum ġe·timbrode, būtan ūþrum lāssum cēastrum unrīm. And for þām þe þis 25 īcgland under þām selfan norþdæle middan-ġeardes nichst liþ, lēohta niht on sumera hæfþ; swā þæt oft on midre nihte ġe·flit cymþ þām be·healdendum, hwæþer hit sie þe æfen-glōmung þe on morgen dagung : is on þām sweotol þæt þis īcgland hæfþ

micle lengran dagas on sumera, and swā ēac niht on wintra,
· þonne þā sūþdælas middangeardes.

30

On fruman ærest wāron þisses iēglandes bī-gen̄an Brettas
āne, fram þām hit naman on-fēng. Is þæt sægd þæt hie cōmon
fram Armoricāno þāre mægþe on Bretene, and þā sūþdælas
þisses iēglandes him ge-sæton and ge-āgnodon.

Þā ge-lamp æfter þām þæt Peohta þēod cōm of Scipia-lande 35
on scipum, and þā ymb;ærndon eall Bretene ge-māru, þæt hie
cōmon on Scotland ūp, and þār ge-mētton Scotta þēode, and
him bādon setles and eardung-stōwe on hiera lande be-twix
him. Andswarodon Scottas þæt hiera land ne wāren tō þæs
mičel þæt hie mihten twā þēoda ge-habban; ac cwādon: 'Wē 40
magon ēow sellan hālwende ge-þeahte hwat gē dōn magon.
Wē witon heonan nāht feorr öþer iēglans east-rihtc, þæt wē
magon oft leohtum dagum ge-sēon. Gif gē þæt sēcan willaþ,
þonne magon gē þār cardungstowe habban, oþþe ḡif hwelc
ēow wiþ-stent, þonne ge-fultumiaþ wē ēow.' Þā fērdon Peohtas 45
in Bretene, and on-gunnor eardian þā norþdælas þisses iēglan-
des, and Brettas, swā wē ær cwādon, þā sūþdælas. Mid þy
Peohtas wif næfdon, bādon him fram Scottum. Þā ge-pafodon
hie þāre arādnessc, and him wif sealdon, þæt þār sēo wisc on
twēon cume, þæt hie þonne mā of þām wif-cynne him cyning 50
curen þonne of þām wāpned-cynne, þæt ḡiet tō-dæg is mid
Peohtum healden.

Þā, forþ-ganggenre tīde, æfter Brettum and Peohtum, pridde
cynn Scotta Bretene on-fēng on Peohta dāle, þā wāron cumene
of Hibernia, Scotta iēglande, mid hiera here-togan, Reada 55
hātte; oþþe mid frēond-scipe oþþe mid ge-fohte him selfum
be-twix hie setl and eardungstowe ge-āgnodon, þā hie nū ḡiet
habbaþ. Þæt cynn nū geond tō-dæg Dalreadingas wāron
hātene.

Hibernia, Scotta iēglans, ge on brādu his stealles, ge on 60
hālwendnesse, ge on smyltnesse lyfta, is betere micle þonne
Bretene land; swā þæt þār seldan snāw leng liþ þonne þrie
dagas. And þār nāniȝ mann for wintres ciele on sumera hīeg
ne māwþ, ne scypenne his nēatum ne timbraþ; ne þār man

65 ænigne snicendne wyrm ne ætrenne ne ȝe-siehp, ne þær æniȝ
nædre libban ne mæȝ. Is þæt iegland welig on meolcum and
on hunige, and wingeardas weaxap on sumum stowum, and
hit is fiscwielle and fugolwielle, and mære on huntunge heorota
and rāna.

70 Wæs Bretene iegland Rōmānum uncūp oþ þæt Gāius se
cāsere, Ȥpre naman Iūlius, hit mid fierde ȝe-sōhte and ȝe-ēode
siextigum wintra ēr Crīstes cyme.

B. THE CONVERSION OF NORTHUMBRIA

þā se cyning þās word ȝe-hierde, þā andswarode hē him, and
cwæþ þæt hē ȝēþer ȝe wolde ȝe scolde þām ȝe-lēafan on-fōn
75 þe hē lärde. Cwæþ hwæþre þæt hē wolde mid his frēondum
and mid his ealdormannum and mid his witum sprācē habban
and ȝe-peah, gīf hie þæt þafian wolden þæt hie ealle æt-samne
on lifes wielle Crīste ȝe-hālgode wāren. Þā dyde se cyning
swā he cwæþ, and se biskop þæt ȝe-þafode. Þā hæfde hē sprācē
80 and ȝe-peah mid his witum, and' synderliȝe wæs fram him
eallum frīgnende hwelc him þūhte and ȝe-sewen wāre þeos
niwe lär and þāre god-cundnesse bi-gang þe þær lāred wæs.

Him þā andswarode his ealdor-biscop, Cēfi wæs hāten:
'Ge-seoh þū, cyning, hwelc þeos lär sie, þe ūs nū bodod is.
85 Ic þē sōþliȝe andette þæt ic cūþliȝe ȝe-leornod hæbbe, þæt
eallunga nāwiht mægenes ne nyntesse hæfp sēo ȝē-fæstnes þe
wē oþ þis hæfdon and be-ēodon. For þām nān þinra þegna
nēodlicor ne ȝe-lust-fullicor hine ȝe-þēodde on ūra goda bi-
gangum þonne ic; and þēah maniȝe sindon þe māran giefa and
90 frem-fulnessa æt þē on-fēngon þonne ic, and on eallum þingum
māran ȝe-syntu hæfdon. Hwæt ic wāt, gīf ūre godu ænȝe miht
hæfden, þonne wolden hie mē bet fultumian, for þām ic him
ȝeornlicor þēodde and hīerde. For þām mē þyncþ wīslīc, gīf
þū ȝe-sēo þā þing beorhtran and strengran þe ūs niwan bodod
95 sindon, þæt wē þām on-fōn.'

þā þæs cyninges wita Ȥper and his ealdormann ȝe-þafunge
sealde, and tō þāre sprācē fēng and þus cwæþ: 'Þyllīc mē is

ge·sewen, cyning lēofosta, þis andwearde lif manna on eorþan tō wiþ·metennesse þāre tide þe ūs uncūþ is, swelcē þū æt swāsendum sitte mid þinum ealdormannum and þeónum on 100 winter-tide, and sie fyr on·æled and þin heall ge·wiermed, and hit rīne and sniwe and hagolige; and ān spearwa þanon ӯtane cume and hrædliče þā healle þurh-flēoge, and cume þurh ðōre duru inn, þurh ðōre ӯt ge·wīte. Hwæt hē, on þā tīd þe hē inne biþ, 'ne biþ hrinen mid þy storme þas wintres; ac þæt biþ ān 105 ēagan-bearhtm and þæt lāste fæc, ac hē sōna of wintre on winter eft cymþ. Swa þonne þis manna lif tō med-miclum fæce æt·iewþ; hwæt þār-be-foran gange, and hwæt þār-æfter fylge, wē ne cunnon. For þām gif þeos nīwe lār ā-wiht cūplicre and ge·wisslicre bringe, þas wierþe hēo is þæt wē þāre fylgen.' 110 Þisum wordum ge·licum ðōre ealdormenn and þas cyninges ge·þeahteras spræcon.

Þā wæs se cyning openliče andettende þām biscope and him eallum þæt he wolde fæstliče þām dēofol-ȝieldum wiþ·sacan, and Cr̄istes ge·lēafan on·fōn.

VIII

FROM 'ALEXANDER'S LETTER TO
ARISTOTLE'

Hēt ic þā ælcne mann hine mid his wēpnum ge·gierwan and faran forþ, and þæt ēac fæstlice be·bēad þæt sē mann sē ne wāre mid his wēpnum æfter fierd-wisan ge·giered þæt hine man scolde mid wēpnum ā·cwellan. Þā wundrodon hie swiþe 5 for hwon hīc þā hefignesse and micelnessc þāra wēpna in swā miclum þurste beran scolden, þær nāniг fēond ne at·iewde; ac ic wiste hwæþre þæt ūre fōr and siþ-fat wæs þurh þā land and stōwa þe missenlicra cynna cardung in wæs nādrena and rīfra wildēora, and wē, þe þæs landes unglēawe and unwise 10 wāeron, þæt ūs þonne semninga hwelc earfoþe on be·cōme.

Fērdon wē þā forþ be þāre ēa ūfre. Þā wæs sēo eahtoþe tīd dæges, þā cōmon wē tō sumre byriг. Sēo burg wæs on midre þāre ēa in ānum ieg-lande ge·timbrod. Wæs sēo burg mid þy hrēode and trēow-cynne þe on þāre ēa ūfre wēox, and 15 wē ðær bī writon and sægdon, ā·sett and ge·worht. Þā ge·sāwon wē in þāre byriг and on·gēaton mennisce menn fēa healf-nacode eardiende. Þā hīc þā ūs ge·sāwon, hie selfe sōna in hiera hūsum diegollīce hie miþon. Þā wilnode ic þāra manna ansiene tō ge·sēonne, þæt hīc ūs fersc wāter and swēte ge·tāhten.

20 Mid þy wē þā lange bidon and ūs nāniг mann tō wolde, þā hēt ic fēa stræla sendan in þā burg innan, tō þon, gif hie hiera willum ūs tō noldon, þæt hīc for þām ege þæs ge·feoþtes niede scolden. Þā wāron hīc þy swiþor ā·fyrhte, and hīc fæstor hȳddon. Þā hēt ic twā hund mīnra þeþna of Grēca herige 25 lēohtum wēpnum hīc ge·gierwan, and hīc on sunde tō þāre byriг fōren and swummen ofer æfter þāre ēa tō þām ieglande. Þā hīc þā hæfdon fēorþan dæl þāre ēa ge·swummen, þā be·cōm sum angrislicu wise on hīc. Þæt wæs þonne nicora menigu, on ansiene māran and unhierlicran þonne þā elpendas, in þone 30 grund þāre ēa and be·twix þā yþa þæs wāteres þā menn

be·sencte, and mid hiera mūþe hie sliton and blōdgodon, and hie ealle swā for·nāmon þæt ūre nāniȝ wiste hwær hiera ȝenig cōm.

Þā wæs ic swiþe ierre þām mīnum lād-þēowum þā ūs on swelcē frēcennessa ȝe·lāddon; hēt hiera þā be·scūfan in þā ēa 35 Ȥper healf hund, and sōna þæs þe hie inne wāron, swā wāron þā nicoras gearwe. Tō·brugdon hie swā hie þā Ȥpre ær dydon; and swā þicce hie in þārē ēa ā·wēollon swā æmettan, þā nicoras, and swelc unrim hiera wæs. Þā hēt ic blāwan mīne bieman and þā fierd faran. 40

Siþhan wē þā þanon fēdon, þā wæs hit on seofon nihta fæce þæt wē tō þām lande and tō þārē stōwe be·cōmon þār Porrus sē cyning mid his fierde wicode; and hē swiþe þæs landes fæstennum trēowode þonne his ȝe·feohte and ȝe·winne.

Þā wīlnode hē þæt hē mē cūþe and mīne þegnas. Þā hē þæs 45 frægn and āscode fram þām fērendum mīnra wic-stōwa, þā wæs þæt mē ȝe·sægd þæt hē wilnode mē tō cunnenne and mīn werod. Þā ā·legde ic minne cyne-ȝierelan, and mē mid uncūþe hrægle and mid lȤþerliče ȝierelan mē ȝe·ȝierede, swelcē ic wāre hwelc folclīc mann and mē wāre metcs and wines þearf. 50 Þā ic wæs in þām wīcum Porres, swā ic ær sægde. Þā sōna swā hē mē þār ȝe·āscode, and him man sægde þæt þār man cumen wæs of Alexandres here-wīcum, þā hēt hē mē sōna tō him lēðlan.

Mid þy ic þā wæs tō him ȝe·lādd, þā frægn hē mē and 55 āscode hwæt Alexander se cyning dyde, and hū·lič mann hē wārc, and in hwelcre ieldu. Þā bismrode ic hine mid mīnum andswarum and him sægde þæt hē for·ealdod wāre, and tō þæs eald wāre þæt hē ne mihte elcor ȝe·wearmian būtan æt fȤre and æt glēdum. Þā wæs hē sōna swiþe glæd and ȝe·fēonde 60 þāra mīnra andswara and worda, for þon ic him sægde þæt hē swā for·ealdod wāre, and þā cwæþ hē ēac: ‘Hū mæg hē, lā, ȝenige ȝe·winne wiþ mē spōwan, swā for·ealdod mann? For þon ic eom mē self ȝeong and hwæt!’ Þā hē þā ȝeornlicor mē frægn be his þingum, þā sægde ic þæt ic his þinga fela ne 65

cūþe, and hine seldan ȝe·sāwe, þone cyning, for þām þe ic
wāre his þegnes manн and his cēapes hierde and wāre his
feoh-bīgen̄a. Þā hē þās word ȝe·hierde, þā sealde mē ān ȝe·writ
and ānne epistolan, and mē bæd þat ic hine Alexandre þām
70 ȝyninge ā·ȝēafe, and mē ēac mēde ȝe·hēt ȝif ic hit him ā·ȝiefan
wolde; and ic him ȝe·hēt þat ic swā dōn wolde swā hē mē bæd.

Þā ic þā þanon ȝe·witen wæs, and eft cōm tō minum here-
wicum, þā ægþer ȝe ēr þon þe ic þat ȝe·writ rādde, ȝe ēac
æfter þām, ic wæs swiþe mid hleahtre on·styred. Hæfde ic þā
75 þās ȝyninges wič and his fæstennu ȝe·scēawod þe hē mid his
fierde in ȝe·fareni hæfde.

IX

MEDICINAL RECIPES

A

Ðeos wyrt, þe man betonican nemneð, hēo biþ cenned on mædum and on clænum dūnlandum and on gefriþedum stōwum. Sēo dēah gehwæþer ge þas mannes sāwle ge his lichoman. Hīo hyne scyldeþ wið unhȳrum nihtengūm and wið egeslicum gesihðum and swefnum; and sēo wyrt byþ swȳþe hāligu. And 5 þus þū hī scealt niman on Agustes mōnðe būtan īserne; and þonne þū hī genumene hæbbe, āhryse þā moldan of, þat hyre nānwiht on ne clyfie, and þonne driȝ hī on sceade swȳþe þearle, and mid wyrtruman mid ealle gewyrč tō dūste. Brūc hyre þonne, and hyre byrig þonne ðū beþurfe. 10

Gif þennes hēafod tōbrocen sȳ, genim þā ylcan wyrte betonican, scearfa hȳ þonne and gnid swȳþe smale tō dūste. Genim þonne twēga trymessa wāgē, þige hit þonne on hātum bēore. Þonne hālað þat hēafod swȳðe hraðe æfter þām drince.

Wið ēagena sār, genim þāre ylcan wyrtruman, sēoð 15 on wætere tō priddan dæle, and of þām wætere beþa þā ēagan; and genim þāre sylfan wyrte lēaf and brȳt hȳ, and lege ofer þā ēagan on þone andwlitan.

Wið ēarena sār, genim þāre ylcan wyrte lēaf þonne hēo grēnosj bēo, wyl on wætere and wring þat wōs, and siþþan 20 hyt gestanden bēo, dō hit eft wearmp and þurh wulle drype on þat ēare.

B

Wið þā bleȝene, genim nigon ȝeþra and sēoð hiȝ fæste, and nim þā geolcan and dō þat hwīte aweȝ; and mera ðā geolcan on ānre pannan and wring þat wōs ut þurh ānne clāð. And 25 nim eall swā fela dropena wīnes swā ȝeþra bēo, and eall swā fela dropena unhālgodes eles, and eall swā fela hunigēs dropena; and of finoles more eall swā fela dropena genim þonne, and gedō hit eall tōsomne and wring ūt þurh ānne clāð, and syle þām menn etan. Him byð sōna sēl. 30

NOTES

References are to sections of the Grammar

I. FROM THE GOSPEL OF ST. MATTHEW

The text is based on MS. Corpus Christi College Cambridge 140, edited by W. W. Skeat, *The Holy Gospels in Anglo-Saxon . . .* (Cambridge, 1871-87).

1. **ælc þāra þe.** For other examples of the 'partitive genitive' see § 86. **þās min word.** § 89, end. **ge·hierþ.** § 91, end. **þā.** § 47. **biþ.** § 92.

2. **þām wisan were.** § 87 (1), end; § 89 (1). **sē.** § 50. **ofer stān.** § 96. **þā cōm.** § 100 (2).

4. **hit nā ne fēoll.** § 97.

7. **sē.** § 47.

8. **flöd** is here neuter plural, as shown by the form of the verb. It is often masculine.

11. **is ge·worden.** An over-literal rendering of the Lat.*fū factum est.*

12. **þā þā menn slēpon.** § 92.

14. **þā sēo wyrt wēox.** § 100 (3).

15. **hine** is reflexive. § 45.

16. **ne sēowe þū.** § 98.

17. **hē** is masculine in agreement with the gender of *æcer*. § 84.

18. **unhold mann.** § 90.

18-19. **gāþ, gadriþ.** The construction is irregular. Normal usage would require a *þæt*-clause with subjunctive—§ 94, B (2). This rendering is paratactic, lit. 'Do you wish? Shall we go and gather . . .?' **hīe pl.**, inconsistently with the context.

20. **ā·wyrtwalien.** § 94, B (4).

21. **secge.** The sense is future. § 92.

23. **tō for·bærnenne.** § 95. Out of such active forms ('in order to burn it') developed the passive sense ('in order that it may be burnt') as in Mn.E. 'a house to let'.

25. **hund scēapa.** § 40. **ān of þām.** *of*, lit. 'from', is often used in this partitive sense. Sometimes *of* alone implies 'some of', as l. 69 of *ēowrum ele* 'some of your oil'.

28. **ge·limpþ, fint.** The verbs in the *gif*-clause and the clause dependent on it are indicative instead of subjunctive, because the event is not considered unreal. § 94, B (8), end.

32-3. **ge·wordenre ge·cwidrædenne.** A very stiff imitation of the ablative absolute of the original: *conuentione autem facta cum operariis*—§ 87 (2); **þām wyrhtum** is dative of the person affected—§ 87 (1).

36. **gā gē.** § 56; so also **stande gē** l. 40.
 37. **pāt**, 'that which'. § 50.
 38. **dyde pām swā gē-līte.** The Latin has simply *fecit similiter*. The sense is 'did like to that' (i.e. like his former proceeding), the *swā* being pleonastic.
 39. **funde** is the usual preterite of *findan*, abnormal in being a weak form when the rest of the verb is strong. § 64 (a).
 40. **ealne dæg.** § 85.
 41. **for pām be.** § 96, end.
 43. **wæs . . . gē-worden.** For periphrastic tenses with *wesan* see § 92.
 48. **scolden.** For this and other uses of tenses in this passage (*worhton* l. 50, *bēōþ* l. 57) see § 92.
 63. **ne nāmon nānne ele.** § 97.
 66. **man.** § 51.
 '67. **him tō-gēanes.** For the order see § 96.
 69. **of ēowrum ele.** See note to l. 25 above.
 72. **ēow**, 'for yourselves'. §§ 45, 87 (1).
 74. **æt nīehstan**, 'at last, finally' (at the point of time nearest the telling). This is the regular meaning of the phrase.
 75. **hā ðpre.** § 89, end.
 79. **sum mann.** § 90, end.
 84. **fife.** § 40.
 90. **cwæþ tō him.** § 87 (1).
 91. **bū gōda þēow and gē-trēowa.** § 100.
 94-5. **ic hæbbe gē-striened.** § 92. Though the form is more specific the sense does not differ from that of *gē-striende* l. 90.
 104-5. **be-fæste, nāme.** Cf. § 94, B (3, 8).
 106. **æt** commonly indicates the source *at* which something is sought, and so is used where M.N.E. would require *from*.
 108-9. **him byncþ.** § 87 (1). **hæbbe** is subjunctive in what is virtually indirect speech, dependent on the verb 'seem'. § 94, B (1).

II. OLD TESTAMENT PIECES

A. is Genesis xxii in Ælfric's translation of the Heptateuch, MS. Cotton Claudius B. iv, edited by S. J. Crawford, *The Old English Heptateuch*, E.E.T.S. O.S. 160 (1921). B. and C. are from homilies by Ælfric, B. based on B.M. MS. Royal 7 C. xii, C. on MS. Bodley 342. They are edited from the Cambridge manuscript by B. Thorpe, *The Homilies of the Anglo-Saxon Church* (1844-6), i. 570 and ii. 432.

7. **on þone þriddan dæg.** § 96.
 8. **tō scoldon.** § 95, end.
 9. **ēow.** A pleonastic reflexive dative like *him* l. 42. § 87 (1).
 10. **unc** goes with *gē-bildenne*; *gē-biddan* in the sense 'say one's

prayers' is commonly accompanied by a reflexive pronoun, usually accusative.

14. **sie.** § 94, B (1). **Is** agrees with only the first part of the subject. § 91.

16. **him self.** § 45, end. In such constructions appears the origin of Mn.E. *himself*.

20. **wurde.** The subjunctive depends on the idea of intention in *wolde*.

25–6. **nū . . . nū.** These are correlative: 'now . . . now that', the second *nū* being virtually causal, 'since'.

29, 30. **ge-hæft.** § 83. **ā-hefde.** An occasional weak preterite of *-hebban*, which usually has *-hōf*. § 67.

36. **mīn ege.** *mīn* is 'objective genitive'. § 86. **māre,** neuter, 'a greater thing', 'something more important'.

37. **blētsīgē.** *blētsian*, earlier *blēdsian*, is derived from *blōd* 'blood' (with mutation of the root-vowel). It evidently meant originally 'sprinkle with blood', and so, in heathen times, 'consecrate' by sprinkling with the blood of a sacrificial victim. It was early adapted to Christian use, like a number of other words of heathen religious application, and usually translates *benedicere*.

51. **him tō handum.** § 87 (1).

55. **scolden.** Cf. § 94, end.

68. **pār.** § 99, end. **Ār.** For this expression of pluperfect sense see § 92.

74. **hēt inn weorpan.** Cf. § 95.

86. **ā-ēode.** Impersonal verbs are often used thus, without expressed subject; but *hit* as subject is also frequent, as *hit ge-lamp* l. 84, and increases during the O.E. period.

94. **fram** here evidently means 'from', as commonly. It is also often used to indicate the agent in passive constructions.

96. **wite.** § 94, B (9).

108. **on his wīp-metennesse.** § 86.

110. **wīp-stande.** § 94, B (5).

113. **ge-ēacnod.** A feminine singular without ending. § 29 (a).

III. SAMSON

From Ælfric's paraphrase of the Book of Judges, in MS. Laud Misc. 509, ed. Crawford, *Heptateuch*.

1. **wæs eardiende.** Cf. § 92, end.

7. **ongīnþ tō āliesenne** means virtually 'will liberate'; *onginnan* is often used pleonastically in this way. See also § 95.

30. **āsende drincan.** After verbs of giving and the like this use of the infinitive of verbs of eating and drinking, with no object expressed, is regular.

35. **Gaza gehāten.** § 83.

40-1. **swā swā hie belocenu wæron**, 'locked as they were'.

41. **tō ufeweardum þām cnolle**, 'to the upper part of the summit', so 'to the top of the hill'. § 82, under *-weard*.

42. **gesihþum**. The use of singular or plural in expressing possessions or characteristics of a number of individuals often differs from M.N.E. idiom. Contrast VI, 64 note.

45. **wæs**, 'consisted'. For the mood see § 94, B (1).

50. **geworhte**. § 83. The dative *geworhtum*, agreeing with *rāpum*, would be regular. Perhaps the nominative is due to confusion with a relative construction: *þe of sinum geworhte sind*.

59-60. **hēo lēt þā swā**, 'she let it rest there'.

68. **tō langre fierste**. *fierst* is usually masculine (e.g. I, 87: *æfter miclum fierste*) but here feminine, as German *Frist*.

71. **swelcē**, 'on the ground that', 'because (as they said)'.

, 75. **bliþost**. § 83, end. **hie sume**. § 86.

77. **hēton**. The plural is loosely used with reference to an obviously plural subject, though a singular verb, parallel with *gefette*, would be correct; cf. § 91.

82. **forþ** is commonly used to strengthen *mid* in this way: 'along with (them)'. **mā**, the comparative adverb, is used as a noun-equivalent to mean 'more in number'.

IV. FROM THE CHRONICLE

The text is based on the Parker manuscript, ed. Plummer and Earle, *Two of the Saxon Chronicles Parallel* (Oxford, 1892). For a discussion of the early entries see F. M. Stenton, *Anglo-Saxon England* (Oxford, 1943), pp. 15 ff.

1. **Hēr** is the usual opening of each annal. It means 'at this point in the series', so virtually 'at this date'.

3. **Wyrtgeorn** is the regular development of an earlier O.E. **Wurtigern* adapted from the British *Uortigern*.

4. **Ypwinesflēot** is apparently Ebbsfleet in Thanet.

8. **Angle**, dative singular of the noun *Angel*, the continental home of the Angles, probably essentially the same as *Angeln*, a district of modern Schleswig. **hēton him sendan**. *him* is reflexive: 'ordered a greater force to be sent to them'.

9. **Bret-wēala**. The second element, nom. sing. *Wealh*, meant 'foreigner', but acquired the special sense of 'Briton'.

14. **on West-seaxum**. Cf. § 27.

20. **Æglesþrep** is thought to be an early, or alternative, name for Aylesford, Kent.

24. **Crecganford**, evidently Crayford.

32. **Cerdices-ōra** and **Cerdices-ford** I. 43 cannot be identified.

50. II. The modern form *Iona* arose from a misreading of the

adjective *Ioua (insula)*; for details see Plummer, *Baeda Opera Historica*, ii. 127.

52. *seofon* and *hundseofontiġ*, though uninflected, is to be taken as agreeing with *wintra* as a genitive of description; cf. § 86.

58. *hwæt, þæt*. § 84.

64. *wære*. § 94, B (9). *þy . . . þy*. § 99.

66. *Ecgþryhting*. § 82.

68. *hāƿne menn*, Danes.

68–9. mid *Defena-scīre*, 'together with Devonshire', i.e. with the Devonshire *fierd*, the defence force in which all freemen were required to serve. *Wicganbeorg* is not certainly identified.

71. *dux* is written instead of *ealdormann*. So also *rex* sometimes occurs for *cyning*. *Sandwīc*, Sandwich.

74. *fēorþe healf hund*. § 41.

78. *Āclēa* would normally appear as *Oakley* in Mn.E., but the place is not identified.

80. *herige*. The Danish army is always so called in the Chronicle (not always elsewhere; cf. VI, 42, 80). The word *here*, presumably through its association with *hergian* 'harry', came to be applied only to a band of marauders. In the Laws, *here* is defined as a gang of thieves more than thirty-five in number. The English army is regularly called *fierd*, as ll. 76, 79.

83. *Norþ-wēalas*, the Welsh of Wales, as distinguished from the *West-wēalas* of Cornwall.

84. *ȝehiersumode*. The subject, *hē*, i.e. Burgred, is left unexpressed.

90. *Tenet*, Thanet.

94. *Scēap-ieġe*, Sheppey in Kent. The name means 'sheep island'.

102. *Wintanċeaſtre*, Winchester. The first element of the name is the Latinized British *Uenta (Belgarum)*.

112. *Humber-mūþan*, the mouth of the Humber.

113. *Eoforwīc*, York; an 'etymologizing' adaptation (*wic* = 'dwelling') of the British name seen in the Latin form *Eboracum*.

114–15. *hæfdon . . . āworpenne*. § 92.

116. *þām* anticipates the following *þæt*-clause: 'they turned to (that, namely) fighting against the Danish army'; cf. § 99.

119. *inne wurdon*, 'got in'.

123. *Snotingahām*, Nottingham. *-hām* has no ending in the dative.

132. *Hrofesċeaſtre*, Rochester.

133. *And hie . . .*, i.e. the citizens.

139. *Stūre*, the Stour in Essex.

146. *Siȝene*, the Seine.

V. PREFACES BY ÆLFRIC

A. from B.M. MS. Harley 107. J. Zupitza, *Ælfrics Grammatik und Glossar* (Berlin, 1880) follows MS. St. John's Coll. Oxford 154. B. excerpted from MS. Laud Misc. 509, ed. Crawford, *Heptateuch*.

Ælfric was educated at Winchester. He lived as a monk both there and at Cerne Abbas in Dorset, where he was master of the monastic school, before becoming abbot of Eynsham in 1005. The Grammar, and all his most important English works—homilies, lives of saints, translations from the Bible—were evidently written at Cerne between about 987 and 998.

1. *þās lȳtlan bōc*, Priscian's grammar.

3. *hundeahtatigum spellum*, Ælfric's two series of 'Catholic Homilies'.

11. *godspell*. The original form was evidently *gōd spell* 'good news', a translation of L. *bona adnuntiatio*, which in turn rendered Greek *euaggélion*. The first element was early confused with *gōd* 'God', and the compound understood as 'divine story'. See further the *Oxford English Dictionary* (O.E.D.) under *Gospel*.

26. Dunstan was Bishop of Worcester and London before becoming Archbishop of Canterbury in 960. Æbelwold in 963 became Bishop of Winchester, where Ælfric was his pupil. These two men, with Oswald, Bishop of Worcester, were the leading figures in the revival of Benedictine monasticism in England in the reign of Edgar.

33. *unwritere*. § 81, end.

35. Æpelweard, ealdormann of the western province of Wessex, was descended from the West Saxon royal house. He made a Latin version of the Anglo-Saxon Chronicle. Ælfric also dedicated to him his *Lives of Saints*.

36. *scolde*. § 94, end.

43. *rāðan gehierþ*. § 95.

56-7. *hwæt lȳtles*. *lȳtles* is a partitive genitive depending on the indefinite *hwæt*, and the sense is 'any little thing'. This appears to be the first occurrence of the expression. It was idiomatic, and lasted for several centuries (see O.E.D. under *Little* B. 3. c. and *Little-what*).

62. *ȝetacnode tōwearde*, 'signified as to come'.

VI. KING EDMUND

From B.M. MS. Cotton Julius E. vii, ed. Skeat, *Ælfric's Lives of Saints*, iv, E.E.T.S. O.S. 114 (1900).

This, like the other *Lives* and some other of Ælfric's works (e.g. the version of *Judges* from which III, *Samson*, is taken), is in alliterative prose; that is, the words are arranged in rhythmical groups bound together by alliteration after the manner of O.E. verse, but the range

of rhythms is less restricted than in verse. The alliteration and the movement are clearly discernible:

Eadmund se éadiga Eastengla cýning
wæs snótor and wéorþfull and wéorþode símle
mid æþelum þéawum þone ælmihtigan Gód

1. **sancte** is an English modification of the Latin gen. *sancti*.

sancte Benedictes stōwe, the monastery of Fleury-sur-Loire, so called because it claimed to possess the bones of St. Benedict, brought from their original burial-place at Monte Cassino. Fleury had much influence on the English Benedictine revival.

2–6. Edmund was killed in 869. Dunstan seems to have been born not later than 910, but the exact year is not known. He died in 988. Athelstan reigned from 924 to 939.

5. **sancte** here is the O.E. dative inflexion, *sanct* having been made into a noun.

31. **gewunnenum siȝe**. § 87 (2).

32–3. **ān and twentiȝ gēara**. § 86.

36. **bilewitan**. The second element is evidently the same as (*ge)witt*; the first seems to be from a root meaning 'good, mild', seen in German *billig*. See *O.E.D.* under *Bilewhit*.

43–5. **hætt hē þē dælan . . . and þū bēo**. Notice the change of construction.

64. **bedde**. O.E. sometimes uses a singular noun in this way when the number of individual possessors is plural, but each has only one of the things in question; cf. VIII, 31, *mid hiera mūþe*.

66. **flearmes**. This construction of *wyr̄can* with genitive is frequent.

69. **swelte ic, libbe ic**. § 94, B (8).

80. **fūse**. The plural is no doubt meant to refer to Hinguar and his men together.

96–7. **scuton . . . tō**. This *tō* is adverbial, 'at (him)'.

137. **swā hīc sēlest mihton**, 'as best they could', 'as well as they could'. This construction, with superlative adverb next the verb, is the normal way of expressing such a qualification.

156. **sum widewe**. § 29 (a).

169–70. **swā þæt** here does not denote result, but is explanatory, 'in that'.

171. **strūtiende**. The sense of *strūtian* is not certain. From Abbo's Latin *in ipso conamine* it would seem to be something like 'struggle', which is a meaning of related forms in German dialects. See *O.E.D.* under *Strut*, v.

172. **hīc** is reflexive, as if the subject were plural.

173. **þæs** anticipates the *hū*-clause.

178. The reference is apparently to Proverbs xxiv. 11, the Vulgate text of which is *Erue eos qui ducuntur ad mortem*.

193. **hwæþer**, '(that he might see) whether . . . ?'

199. *swā þæt* is used as in l. 169–70.
 206. *Eadmunde* is to be taken as ‘dative of interest’: ‘who keeps Edmund’s body whole’. See also § 94, B (7).
 213. *Cūþberht*, the celebrated saint of Lindisfarne, went there from Melrose in 664, was consecrated bishop in 685, and died in 687.
 214. *Éliȝ*, Ely. *hiere swostor*, Seaxburg, who succeeded *Æpelþrýþ* as abbess of Ely, apparently in 679. They were daughters of Anna, king of the East Angles. *sancete*, a modification of *sancta*.

VII. THE O.E. TRANSLATION OF BEDE'S ECCLESIASTICAL HISTORY

A. is based on Cambridge University Library MS. Kk. 3. 18, B. on C.C.C. Cambridge MS. 41, both ed. J. Schipper in Grein's *Prosa* (Leipzig, 1897). A. is edited also by T. Miller, E.E.T.S. O.S. 95 (1890).

Bede finished his *Historia Ecclesiastica Gentis Anglorum* in 731. The O.E. translation was evidently made in Alfred's reign, probably under his auspices. Whether he himself wrote it is very doubtful.

3. *micle fæce*. An instrumental of ‘measure of difference’.

4. *eahta hund . . . twā hund*. § 85.

9–10. *berende missenlicra fugla and . . . wæterum*. A confused and unidiomatic rendering of the Latin: . . . *auium ferax terra marique generis diuersi; fluuiis quoque multum piscosis ac fontibus præ-clara copiosis*.

13. *meregrotan*. The word is taken from Latin (from Greek *margarita*; but, by ‘popular etymology’, it has been modified by association with O.E. *mere* ‘sea’ and *grot* ‘grain’).

22. *ānes wana þrītigum*, ‘thirty less one’. In such expressions (which are not frequent and are confined to the tens less one) *wana* is an indeclinable adjective.

24. *unrīm* is to be taken as in apposition to *ceastrum*. It is occasionally left undeclined in this way.

33. *Armoricāno* is taken directly from the Latin *de tractu Armoricanō*, i.e. Armorica, Brittany.

38. *him* reflexive, ‘for themselves’. *setles*. § 86.

49. *þære ārædnesse*, ‘on this condition’, looking forward to the following *þæt*-clause.

66. *meolcum*. This strange use of the plural form in the dative of *meolc* is not uncommon.

74. *ge wolde ge scolde*, ‘it was both his desire and his duty’.

77. *gif*, ‘(to find out) whether’.

80–1. *wæs . . . frīgnende* is an attempt to render the Latin *sciscitabatur*. *gesewen wære*, another Latinism = *uideretur*.

110. *þæs . . . þæt* correlative.

VIII. FROM 'ALEXANDER'S LETTER'

'The Letter of Alexander the Great to Aristotle', which purports to give Alexander's own account of his adventures in the East, is a romantic fiction, composed in Alexandrian Greek, translated into Latin and widely known in the Middle Ages. It was evidently translated into O.E. in the tenth century, and copied into MS. Cotton Vitellius A. xv, where it immediately precedes *Beowulf*. Its style is flat and ungraceful, disfigured especially by the frequent use of pairs of near-synonyms to render a single Latin word; but it is valuable as a specimen of an early 'traveller's tale', showing an aspect of the literary interests of the Anglo-Saxons very little represented in surviving manuscripts. The latest edition is by S. Rypins, in E.E.T.S. O.S. 161 (1924).

2-3. *sē mann . . . þæt hine*. This kind of anacoluthon is frequent in this text; cf. ll. 9-10 *wē . . . þæt ū*.

29. *māran . . . unhierlicran*. Regular syntax would require a genitive plural agreeing with *nicora*; but the nominative corresponds to *menigu*, and the plural to the idea of multitude.

36. *ōper healf hund*. Cf. § 41.

43-4. *swīpe . . . þonne*. *swīpe* may be no more than a slip for *swīþor* (Latin *magis quam praelio*). But such constructions are not unknown elsewhere (esp. *Beowulf*, ll. 69-70), and perhaps the comparative idea is simply to be understood.

64. *mē self*. The construction is the same as that in II, 16, but has become virtually a compound simply emphasizing the subject.

68-9. *gewrit . . . epistolan*. A particularly confusing use of English and Latin synonyms for the same thing.

IX. MEDICINAL RECIPES

A. from MS. Cotton Vitellius C. iii (first half of the eleventh century), B. from Titus D. xxvi (somewhat later). Both are edited in Cockayne's *Leechdoms . . .* (Rolls Series, 1864), i. 70 and 380.

The spelling of these two extracts has been left as it is in the manuscripts, in order to illustrate some of the characteristic features which distinguish the later language from the early West Saxon which is taken as the basis of the grammar in this book, and to which the other texts have been made to conform.

The most important difference lies in the use of *ȝ* instead of

(a) *ȝe* in *scyldeb, unhȳrum* 4, *hyre* 7, 9, 10, *byrig* 10, *sȳ* 11, *hȳ* 12, &c., *wyl* 20;

(b) *ȝ*, especially after *w* in *swȳþe* 5, 8, &c., and in words generally unstressed, as *hyne* 4, *hyt* 21, *byþ* 5, 30, but also in other positions, as *āhryse* 7, *clyfie* 8, *yłcan* 11, 19, *trymessā* 13;

(c) *e* in the group *sel-*, as *sylfan* 17, *syle* 30.

Conversely, *i* appears for earlier *y* before the palatal consonant in *dričg* 8. Earlier *ie* has become *ī* in *hī* 6, 7, 8, and the same sound is represented by *hičg* 23. *Hio* 4 for *hēo* appears in early texts also.

Before nasal consonants, *o* appears instead of *a* in *lichoman* 3, *tosomne* 29.

The vowels of some cases of the definite article have been analogically redistributed, as *bām* 14 for *bæm*, and conversely *ðæra* 26 for *bāra*.

The accusative *ænne* 25, with mutated vowel, instead of *ānne*, is frequent. In *aweg* 24 original *on-* in unstressed position has been weakened to *a-*; and in *ægrā* 23 earlier *-u* has similarly become *-a*.

GLOSSARY

The order is alphabetical (*æ* following *ad*, *þ* following *t*), except that words with the prefix *ge-* are put in the order of the letter that follows the *ge-*: *ge·bed* under *b*, *un·ge·cynde* after *un·cūþ*, &c.

The prefix *ge-* of some words is italicized. This indicates that, in the texts in this book, forms either with or without the prefix may occur, with no distinction of meaning.

The following abbreviations are used:

m., f., n., masculine, feminine, neuter (*noun* is implied).

a., g., d., i., accusative, genitive, dative, instrumental.

sg., pl., singular, plural.

aj. adjective; *av.* adverb; *prn.* pronoun; *num.* numeral; *cj.* conjunction; *prp.* preposition; *w.* with (case).

cp. comparative; *sp.* superlative; *indecl.* indeclinable; *correl.* correlative.

v. verb; *sv.* strong verb; *wv.* weak verb; *ppv.* preterite-present verb.

pret. preterite; *pres.* *pt.* present participle; *p.* *pt.* past participle; *sbj.* subjunctive.

tr. transitive; *int.* intransitive; *rfl.* reflexive; *impers.* impersonal.

The numbers after *sv.*, *wv.* refer to the classes of the verbs in the Grammar.

Words in [] are Latin originals [*L.*] or cognate O.E. words.

A number at the end of an entry means that the word is treated in that section of the Grammar.

ā *av.* (for) ever.
abbod *m.* abbot [*L. abbatem*].
ā·bēodan *sv.* 2 *w.* *d.* announce.
ā·bitan *sv.* 1 devour.
ā·blendan *wv.* 1 blind.
ā·bügan *sv.* 2 bend, swerve, turn; submit.
āc *f.* oak.
ac *cj.* but; and.
ā·cennan *wv.* 1 bear (child).
ā·cōlian *wv.* 2 grow cold.
ā·cwellan *wv.* 1 kill.
ā·cwencan *wv.* 1 extinguish.
ā·drinca *sv.* 3 be drowned.
ā *f.* (*sg. indecl.*) law.
æcer *m.* field.
æ·fæst-nes *f.* religion.
æfen *mn.* evening.
æfen-glōmung *f.* twilight.
æfre *av.* ever, always.

æfter *av., prp. w. d.* after; according to, by; through.
æg *n.* (*pl.* *ægru*) egg. 26.
æg-hwēlc *prn.* each.
ægþer *prn.* either, each; both; *cj.* **ægþer** *ge . . . ge* both . . . and [= *æg-hwæþer*].
æht *f.* property [*ähte*, *ågan*]. 18.
ælč *prn.* *aj.* each, every, all. 51.
æl-mihtiġ *aj.* almighty.
æmette *f.* ant.
ænig *prn. aj.* any [*ān*].
ær *prp. w. d., av., cj. w. sbj.* before (of time), formerly; *sp.* **ærest** *aj.* and *av.* first; **ær þām þe**, **ær þon þe** *cj.* before. 34, 92.
ærce-biscop *m.* archbishop [*L. archiepiscopus*].
ærende *n.* errand, message. 16.
ærend-raca *m.* messenger.

ærest *see ær.*

æ-rist *mfn.* (rising up), resurrection [ärisan].

ærne-merȝen *m.* early morning.

æsc *m.* (ash-tree), warship.

æt *prp. w. d.* at; *deprivation* from; specifying action wurdon æt spræc 'talked together'.

æt-bregðan *sv. 3* take (snatch) away.

æt-ēowian *wv. 2 w. d.* shƿow.

æt-foran *prp. w. d.* in front of.

æt-gædre *av.* together.

æt-īewan *wv. 1 w. d., tr.* show, *int.* appear [-ēowian]. 71.

æt-līcȝan *sv. 5* lie idle.

ætven *aj.* poisonous, venomous.

æt-samme *av.* together, at once.

æþeþle *aj.* noble.

æþeling *m.* prince, noble.

ā-faran *sv. 6* go away, depart.

ā-feallan *sv. 7* fall down.

ā-flieman *wv. 1* put to flight, drive into exile [fleām].

ā-fylān *wv. 1* defile [fūl].

ā-fyrt *aj.* frightened [*p. pt. pf. afyrtan from forht*].

āgan *ppr.* possess, own. 77.

ā-gān *v.* happen, befall.

āgen *aj.* own [*p. pt. of āgan*].

ā-giefan *sv. 5 w. d.* give, give up, render, deliver.

ge-āgnian *wv. 2* (make one's own), appropriate [ägen].

Agustus *m!* (*g. Agustes*) August [L.].

āh *seq. āgan.*

ā-hebban *sv. 6* raise, lift up.

ā-hefde *wk. pret. of āhebban.*

ā-hieldan *wv. 1* incline, bend.

ā-hrēsan *sv. 2* fall (down).

ā-hrissan *wv. 1* shake off.

āhte, āhton *see āgan.*

ā-hwær *av.* anywhere.

ā-hýrian *wv. 2* hire.

ā-lecgān *wv. 1* lay down, put away.

ā-liesan *wv. 1* (loosen), release, liberate; redeem [lēas].

ā-liesend *m.* redeemer. 82.

ān *aj. prn.* one (*always strong*); a certain (one); the same; only,

alone (*generally weak*); *g. pl. in* ānra gehwelc 'each one'. 38, 39, 51.

ān-cenned *aj. (p. pt.)* (only-born), only (child).

and *cj. and.*

and-bidian *wv. 2 w. g.* await [bidan].

andettan *wv. 1* confess.

and-giet *m.* sense, meaning; understanding, intelligence.

and-swarian *wv. 2 w. d.* answer [andswaru]. 73.

and-swaru *f.* answer, reply [swerian]. 17.

and-weard *aj.* present.

and-wlita *m.* face.

and-wyrdan *wv. 1 w. d.* answer [word].

āne *av.* at once, at one time [ān].

Angel *n.* Angeln (in Schleswig).

Angel-cynn *n.* the English nation, England. 27.

an-ginn *n.* beginning.

an-gris-lič *aj.* terrible.

ā-niman *sv. 4* take away.

ge-ān-lēcan *wv. 1* unite, join together. 71.

ān-mōd *aj.* unanimous.

ān-mōd-līcē *av.* unanimously.

ān-rād *aj.* constant, resolute.

an-sien *f.* face, appearance.

an-sund *aj.* sound, whole, uncorrupted.

an-weald *m.* rule, authority, power.

apostol *m.* apostle [L.].

ār¹ *f.* honour, grace; mercy. 17.

ār² *n.* copper.

ā-rād-nes *f.* condition, stipulation.

ā-rāran *wv. 1* raise, build, build up [ärisan].

ārlan *wv. 2 w. d.* honour; spare, have mercy on [är¹].

ā-risan *sv. 1* arise.

ār-lēas *aj.* impious, wicked.

arn *see iernan.*

arod *aj.* quick, prompt; bold.

arod-līcē *av.* quickly, readily; boldly.

ār-weorþ *adj.* (worthy of honour), venerable.
āscian *wv.* 2 ask. 73.
ge-·āscian *wv.* 2 hear of, discover.
ā-·scūfan *sv.* 2 thrust.
ā-·sendan *wv.* 1 send.
ā-·settan *wv.* 1 set up, build.
ā-·smēagan *wv.* 2 consider, think of; conceive; interpret.
assa *m.* ass.
ā-·strec̄can *wv.* 1 stretch out, extend. 72.
ā-·styrian *wv.* 1 stir, move.
ā-·tēon *sv.* 2 draw, take out.
ā-·tēorian *wv.* 2 fail, fall away.
āþ *m.* oath. 13.
ā-·weallan *sv.* 7 swarm.
ā-·weccan *wv.* 1 awake, rouse [wacian].
ā-·wēdan *wv.* 1 go mad [wōd].
ā-·wendan *wv.* 1 turn; change; translate.
ā-·weorpan *sv.* 3 throw, cast out; reject; depose (king).
ā-·werian *wv.* 1 defend.
ā-·wēstan *wv.* 1 lay waste, ravage.
ā-·wierged *adj.* cursed, accursed [*p. pt. of* āwiergan from wearg].
ā-wiht *prn.* (aught), anything.
ā-·writan *sv.* 1 write; copy.
ā-·wyrtwalian *wv.* 2 root up [wyrt].

bæc *n.* back; under bæc 'behind'.
bæd, bædon *see biddan.*
bær *see beran.*
bærnet *n.* burning. 15.
bærøn *see beran.*
bæsten *adj.* of bast.
bæþ *n.* bath. 15.
bân *n.* bone. 15.
band *see bindan.*
baþu *see bæþ.*
be *prp.* *w. d.* about, concerning; according to; by, along, in.
beald *adj.* bold.
bearn *n.* child [beran]. 15.
bēatan *sv.* 7 beat. 68.
be-·bēodan *sv. 2 w. d.* command.
be-·byrðan *wv.* 1 bury.

bēc *see bōc.*
be-·clyppan *wv.* 1 embrace, clasp.
be-·cuman *sv.* 4 come, arrive.
ge-·bed *n.* prayer [biddan]. 15.
be-·dælan *wv.* 1 *w. g.* deprive of [dæl].
bedd *n.* bed.
be-·delfan *sv.* 3 (hide by digging), bury.
ge-·bed-hūs *n.* oratory, chapel.
be-·flestan *wv.* 1 commit, entrust.
be-·foran *prp.* *w. d.* before.
be-·gān *v.* practise, profess.
be-·gann *see be-·ginnan.*
be-·geat *see be-·gietan.*
bēgen *prn.* *adj.* both. 39.
be-·gietan *sv.* 5 get, obtain. 66.
be-·ginnan *sv.* 3 begin. 64.
be-·hātan *sv.* 7 *w. d.* promise.
be-·hēafdian *wv.* 2 behead [hēafod]. 81.
be-·healdend *m.* beholder, spectator.
be-·horsian *wv.* 2 provide with horses.
be-·hrēowsian *wv.* 2 repent [hrēowan].
be-·hýdan *wv.* 1 hide.
be-·læwan *wv.* 1 betray.
be-·liefan *wv.* 1 believe.
be-·lifan *sv.* 1 remain [lāf]. 62.
be-·lūcan *sv.* 2 lock, close.
bend *mfn.* bond [bindan].
bēodan *sv.* 2 *w. d.* offer; command. 63.
bēon *v.* be. 78.
bēor *n.* beer.
beorg *m.* hill, mountain. 13.
ge-·beorgan *sv.* 3 *w. d.* save, protect. 64.
beorht *adj.* (bright), fair, noble.
bēot-lič *adj.* arrogant, threatening.
bēoton *see bēatan.*
be-·pæčan *wv.* 1 deceive.
beran *sv.* 4 bear, carry. 65.
ge-·beran *sv.* 4 bear (child); carry.
berende *adj.* fruitful, productive [*pres. pt. of* beran].

bern *n.* barn.
berstan *sv.* 3 burst. 64.
be-sārglān *wv.* 2 lament, be sorry [sārīg].
be-scieran *sv.* 4 shear, cut off the hair of.
be-scūfan *sv.* 2 thrust, throw.
be-sendan *wv.* 1 *tr.* sink, submerge.
be-sēon *sv.* 5 see, look.
be-settan *wv.* 1 surround; set about, cover.
be-stealcian *wv.* 2 go stealthily, steal.
be-stelan *sv.* 4 *rfl.* go stealthily.
be-swican *sv.* 1 deceive, betray.
bet *see* wel.
be-tācān *wv.* 1 commit, entrust.
betera, betst *see* gōd.
betonica *f.* betony. [*L.*]
be-twix *prp. w. a. d.* between, among; betwix þām þe c̄. while.
be-pearf *ppv.* need.
beþian *wv.* 2 foment.
be-werian *wv.* 1 defend.
be-witan *ppv.* watch over, have charge of.
bī *prp., stressed form of be.*
bidan *sv.* 1 wait. 62.
biddan *sv. 5 w. a. of person and g. of thing* ask (for), beg, pray.
ge-biddan *sv. 5 often rfl.* pray.
ge-biegan *wv.* 1 turn; subject [būgar].
bieldu *f.* (boldness), arrogance [beald]. 20.
bierne *f.* trumpet.
biergan *wv.* 1 taste, eat.
biernan *sv.* 3 burn. 64.
bī-gang *m.* worship, observance.
bī-geng *m.* worship, observance.
bī-gen̄ga *m.* inhabitant; keeper.
bile-wit *aj.* innocent [note on VI, 36].
ge-bindan *sv.* 3 bind. 64.
binnan *av.* inside; *prp. w. d.* in, within [= be-innan].
biscop *m.* bishop [*L. episcopus*].
biscop-sunu *m.* godson at confirmation.

bismere *nm.* insult, ignominy, shame; tō bismere 'with ignominy'.
bismer-full *aj.* shameful.
ge-bismrian *wv.* 2 treat with ignominy, insult; mock.
bist *see* bēon.
bitan *sv.* 1 bite. 62.
bij *see* bēon.
blǣcan *wv.* 1 bleach.
bläwan *sv.* 7 blow. 68.
blegen *f.* (blain), blister, ulcer.
blēow, blēowon *see* bläwan.
blētsian *wv.* 2 bless [note on II, 37].
blētsung *f.* blessing.
bliss *f.* joy, gladness.
ge-blissian *wv.* 2 rejoice. 73.
blipe *aj.* glad, merry. 29.
blipe-līce *av.* gladly. 35.
blōd *n.* blood.
blōdgīan *wv.* 2 make bloody.
bōc *f.* book. 22.
ge-bōcian *wv.* 2 grant by charter [bōc].
bodian *wv.* 2 announce, preach [bēodan].
bodig *m.* body.
brād *aj.* broad.
bræc, bræcon *see* brecan.
brædu *f.* breadth [brād].
brægd *see* bregdān.
brēac *see* brūcan.
breca *sv. 4* break; storm, take (a city). 65.
bregdān *sv. 3* pull. 64.
brēmel *m.* bramble.
brētan *sv.* 2 break. 63.
Breten *f.* Britain. 27.
Brettas *m. pl.* the British (Celts).
Brettisc *aj.* British.
Bret-wealh *m.* Briton.
ge-bringan *wv.* 1 bring; bring forth. 72.
brōhte *see* bringan.
brōþor *m.* brother. 23.
brūcan *sv. 2 w. g.* enjoy; use; partake of, take. 63.
brugdon *see* bregdān.
brýd *f.* bride. 18.
brýd-guma *m.* bridegroom (*lit.* bride-man).

brytan *wv.* 1 crush, pound.
būan *wv.* 1 dwell.
būend *m.* dweller [*būan*]. 25.
bufan *prp. w. d. a.* over, above, on [= *be-ufan*].
ge-·bügan *sv. 2* bend, incline; submit. 63.
bunden, bundon *see bindan.*
burg *f.* fortified place; city [*beorgan*]. 22.
burg-·geat *n.* city-gate.
burston *see berstan.*
bütan *av.* outside; *prp. w. d.* without, except; *cj.* unless [= *be-utan*].
bycgan *wv.* 1 buy. 72.
býhp *see bügan.*
byrgan *wv.* 1 bury. 71.
byrgen *f.* tomb [*byrgan*].
ge-·byrian *wv.* 1 be due, befit. 71.
byrig *see burg.*
byrst *f.* bristle.
byrþen *f.* burden [*beran*]. 17.
býsen *f.* example; model, exemplar.
ge-·býsnian *wv. 2* set an example, instruct by example [*býsen*].
ge-·býsnung *f.* example.

cæg *f.* key.
cann *see cunnan.*
canōn *m.* canon [*L.*].
Cant-wara-burg *f.* Canterbury [*g. of Cant-ware*].
Cant-ware *m. pl.* people of Kent [*L. Cantia and ware*]. 14.
cásere *m.* emperor [*L. caesar*].
ceafl *m.* jaw.
céap *n.* (purchase); cattle.
cearf *see ćorfan.*
teaster *f.* city [*L. castra*]. 17.
céne *aj.* brave, bold.
cennan *wv.* 1 bear (child); produce.
Cent *f.* Kent [*L. Cantia*].
Cent-land *n.* Kent.
ćorfan *sv. 3* cut. 64.
ćeosan *sv. 2* choose. 63.
ćepan *wv. 1 w. g.* attend to, look out for.

ćiele *m.* cold.
ćiepan *wv.* 1 trade, sell [*ćēap*].
ćiepend *m.* seller [*ćiepan*].
ge-·ćierran *wv. 1 int.* turn, return; submit; *tr.* convert.
ćild *n.* child. 15, 26.
ćild-hād *m.* childhood. 82.
cinn-bān *n.* jawbone.
ćiriče *f.* church. 11.
clæne *aj.* clean, pure.
clāþ *m.* cloth.
clawū *f.* claw.
clifian *wv. 2* adhere.
clipian *wv. 2* call, summon.
clipung *f.* calling.
cnapa *m.* (boy, youth), servant.
cñāwan *sv.* 7 know. 68.
cniht *m.* youth. 13.
cnoll *m.* top, summit.
coccel *m.* corn-cockle, tares.
cóm, cōmon *see cuman.*
coren *see ćeosan.*
cræft *m.* strength; skill; art, science; cunning.
cristen *aj.* Christian.
ge-·cuman *sv. 4* come; cuman "up 'land'. 65.
cunnan *ppv.* know; know how, be able. 77.
cunnian *wv. 2* try, seek, test [*cunnan*].
curen, curon *see ćeosan.*
cūþ *aj.* known [*originally p. pt. of cunnan*].
cūþe, cūþon *see cunnan.*
cūþ-lic *aj.* certain, evident.
cūþ-licē *av.* certainly, for certain.
cwæde, cwædon *see cweþan.*
cwæþ *see cweþan.*
cwealde *see cwellan.*
cweartern *n.* prison.
cwedēn *see cweþan.*
cwellan *wv.* 1 kill. 72.
cwēn *f.* queen. 18.
cweþan *sv. 5* say, speak; name, call. 66.
cwic *aj.* alive.
cwide *m.* speech [*cweþan*]. 13.
ge-·cwid-ræden *f.* agreement. 82.
cýdde *see cýpan.*
cyme *m.* coming [*cuman*].

cymþ *see cuman.*

cyne-bearn *n.* child of a royal house.

cyne-ȝierela *m.* royal robe.

cyne-liče *av.* like a king, royally.

cyne-riče *n.* kingdom.

cyne-stōl *m.* throne.

cyning *m.* king.

cynn *n.* race, people; kind.

cyre *w.* choice [cēosan]. 13.

cyssan *wv.* i kiss. 70.

cyst *f.* excellence [cēosan]. 18.

cystig *aj.* (excellent), charitable.

cýþan *wv.* i make known, tell [cūþ]. 71.

ge-·cýþ-nes *f.* testament.

dæd *f.* deed. 18.

dæg *m.* day. 13.

dæg-hwām-liče *av.* daily.

dæl *m.* part; be dæle 'partly, to some extent'. 13.

dælan *wv.* i divide, share.

ge-·dafenian *wv.* 2 w. d. befit.

dagas *see dæg.*

dagung *f.* daybreak, dawn.

dēad *aj.* dead.

dēah *see dugan.*

dearr *ppv.* dare. 77.

dēaþ *m.* death.

Defena-scīr *f.* Devonshire.

ge-·delf *n.* digging.

delfan *sv.* 3 dig. 64.

dēman *wv.* i judge [dōm]. 71.

Dene *m. pl.* Danes. 14.

Denisc *aj.* Danish.

dēofol *nm.* devil, the Devil [*L. diabolus*].

dēofol-gield *n.* idol.

dēop *aj.* deep.

dēop-liče *av.* deeply, profoundly.

dēor *n.* wild beast, animal. 15.

diegol *aj.* secret, hidden.

diegol-liče *av.* secretly, in secret.

ge-·dihtan *wv.* i arrange; draw up; compose, write; dictate [*L. dictare*].

disc-þeġn *m.* (dish-servant), steward.

dohtor *f.* daughter. 23.

dōm *m.* doom, judgement, sentence. 13.

domne *m.* lord [*L. domine*].

ge-·dōn *v.* do; act; make; put. 80.

dorste *see dearr.*

draca *m.* dragon [*L. draco*].

dranc *see drincan.*

drēorig *aj.* sad, sorrowful.

drifan *sv.* i drive. 62.

drinc *m.* drink.

drincan *sv.* 3 drink. 64.

dropa *m.* drop.

druncen *see drincan.*

drygān *wv.* i dry.

dryhten *m.* lord.

dryppan *wv.* i tr. drip [dropa].

dugan *ppv.* avail, be useful. 77.

dūn *f.* hill, down.

dūn-land *n.* downland.

durron *see dearr.*

duru *f.* door. 19.

düst *n.* dust, powder.

ge-·dwol-mann *m.* heretic.

ge-·dwol-sum *aj.* misleading.

ge-·dwyl *n.* error [gedwol-].

dyde, **dydon** *see dōn.*

dyppan *wv.* i dip.

dysig *aj.* foolish.

ēa *f.* (g. sg. ēa) river.

ēac *av.* also; ēac swelče 'also, moreover'.

ēacnian *wv.* 2 increase.

ēadiġ *aj.* (prosperous), blessed.

ēagan-bearhtm *m.* twinkling of an eye.

ēage *n.* eye. 11.

ēag-þyrel *n.* (eye-hole), window.

eahta *num.* eight.

ēalā *interj.* oh!

eald *aj.* old; *cp. ieldra.* 29, 32.

ealdor *m.* chief, master, lord, prince. 13.

ealdor-biscop *m.* high priest.

ealdor-mann *m.* chief, officer, governor, nobleman.

Eald-seaxe *m. pl.* Old (i.e. Continental) Saxons.

eall *aj.* all.

eall *av.* quite, just; completely.

eall-niwe *aj.* quite new.

eall-swā *av.* in the same way.

eallunga *av.* entirely.

ealu *n.* ale.

eard *m.* country, native land. 13.

eardian *wv.* 2 *int.* dwell, live; *tr.* inhabit. 73.

eardung-stōwf. dwelling-place.

ēare *n.* ear. 11.

earfōþe *n.* hardship, trouble.

earm *m.* arm (of the body).

earm *aj.* poor, wretched, desppicable.

earm-līcē *av.* miserably, wretchedly.

earn *m.* eagle.

eart *see wesan.*

ēast *av.* eastwards.

East-engle *m. pl.* East Anglians.

ēaste-weard *aj.* eastern, the east part of. 82.

Eastran *f. pl.* Easter.

ēast-rihte *av.* eastwards.

East-seaxe *m. pl.* East Saxons.

ēape-līc *aj.* insignificant, weak.

ge-·ēap-mēdan *wv.* 1 humble [ēapmōd].

ēap-mōd *aj.* humble.

ēap-mōd-līcē *av.* humbly.

ēce *aj.* eternal.

ēc-nes *f.* eternity.

ge-·ēfen-lēcan *wv.* 1 match, imitate.

efne *av.* behold!; indeed; just.

efsian *wv.* 2 cut the hair of.

eft *av.* again; afterwards, then; back.

ege *m.* fear. 13.

ēges-līc *aj.* terrible, awful.

ēhtere *m.* persecutor.

elcor *av.* otherwise.

ele *m.* oil [*L. oleum*].

elles *av.* otherwise.

elpend *m.* elephant [*L. elephant-*].

el-þēodīg-nes *f.* travel or living in foreign lands; exile.

ende *m.* end. 13.

ge-·ende-byrdan *wv.* 1 set in order, arrange.

ende-byrd-nes *f.* order.

endemes *av.* together.

ge-·endian *wv.* 2 end, die. 73.

endleofta *aj.* eleventh. 38.

engel *m.* angel [*L. angelus*]. 13.

Engla-land *n.* England [*g. pl. of Engle*]. 27.

Engle *m. pl.* Angles; the English [Angel]. 14.

Englisc *aj.* English; *n.* the English language [Engle].

ēode, ēodon *see gān.*

eom *see wesan.*

eorl *m.* nobleman. 13.

ernost-līcē *av.* in truth, indeed.

eorþ-būend *m.* dweller on earth, man.

eorþe *f.* earth. 11.

eorþ-fæst *aj.* firm in the earth.

ēow *see þū.*

ēower *prn. aj.* your, yours. 43, 46.

epistola *m.* letter [*L.*].

etan *sv.* 5 eat. 66.

ēpel *m.* native land. 13.

ge-·fadian *wv.* 2 order, dispose, arrange.

fadung *f.* order, arrangement.

fæc *n.* space, interval.

fæder *m.* father. 23.

ge-·fægēn *aj. w. g.* glad.

fæger *aj.* beautiful.

fægnian *wv.* 2 *w. g.* rejoice, be glad.

fæmne *f.* virgin. 11.

fær *m.* (sudden) danger.

fær-līc *aj.* sudden. 29.

fær-līcē *av.* suddenly. .

faest *aj.* firm, fast.

faestan *wv.* 1 fast.

faeste *av.* firmly, securely.

faesten¹ *n.* fortification, fortress; stronghold [fæst]. 15.

faesten² *n.* fast, fasting [fæstan].

faest-līcē *av.* firmly; strictly, resolutely.

fæt *n.* vessel. 15.

fandian *wv.* 2 *w. g.* try, test; tempt [findan]. 73.

fangen *see fōn.*

faran *sv.* 6 go. 67.

ge-·faran *sv.* 6 die.

fatu *see fæt.*

fēa *aj. pl.* few. 29.

ge-·fēa *m.* joy. 11.
feah *see feohtan.*
feallan *sv.* 7 fall. 58.
fēawe *see fēa.*
feax *n.* hair.
fela *aj. indecl.*, usually *w. g.* many, much. 29.
feld *m.* field. 13.
fēng, fēngon *see fōn.*
feoh *n.* cattle; money, property. 15.
feoh-bīgēngā *m.* cattle-keeper.
feoh-ge-·hāt *n.* promise of money.
ge-·feoht *n.* fight, fighting.
ge-·feohtan *sv.* 3 fight. 64.
fēole *f.* file.
fēolian *wv.* 2 file.
fēoll, fēollon *see feallan.*
fēond *m.* enemy. 24.
ge-·fēonde *aj.* joyful [*pres. pt. of ge-fēon* 'rejoice'].
feorh *nm.* life. 13.
feorm *f.* (food), feast, banquet. 17.
feorr *av.* far. 34.
fēorþa *aj.* fourth. 38.
fēower *num.* four. 40.
ge-·fēra *m.* companion [fōr]. 11.
fēran *wv.* 1 go, travel; fare [fōr].
fērend *m.* (traveller), soldier.
ferian *wv.* 1 carry [faran]. 71.
fersc *aj.* fresh.
fetian *wv.* fetch, bring. 74.
ge-·fettē *see fetian.*
fiend *see fēond.*
fierd *f.* army, militia; campaign [faran]. 18.
fierd-wise *f.* campaign order.
fierlen *aj.* distant [feorr].
fierst *mf.* period, time.
fif *num.* five. 40.
fif-tig *num.* fifty.
findan *sv.* 3 (*weak pret.* funde) find. 64.
finol *m.* fennel.
fisc *m.* fish. 13.
fiscere *m.* fisherman. 13.
fisc-wielle *aj.* rich in fish.
fleām *m.* flight [fēon].
fleōgan *sv.* 2 fly. 63.
fēon *sv.* 2 flee. 63.
fleōt *m.* estuary.

fleōtan *sv.* 2 float. 63.
ge-·flieman *wv.* 1 put to flight [fēam].
ge-·flit *n.* dispute.
fliōd *mn.* flood. 15.
fliōr *f.* floor. 19.
floṭa *m.* fleet. 11.
flat-here *m.* army from a fleet, army of pirates.
flat-mann *m.* sailor, pirate.
fliōwan *sv.* 7 flow. 68.
flugon *see flēon.*
flyht *m.* flight [fēogan].
fōda *m.* food. 11.
folc *n.* people, nation. 15.
folc-lič *aj.* popular, public; common.
fōlgian *wv.* 2 *w. d.* follow; obey.
ge-·fōn *sv.* 7 seize, take, capture; fōn tō 'take up, begin'; fōn tō ričē 'come to the throne'; fēngon tōgædre 'joined together'. 68.
for *prp. w. d. i., local before:* for worulde 'in the eyes of the world'; causal for, because of, for the sake of: for Gode ne dorste 'for the fear of God . . .'; temporal before: nū for fēam gēarum 'a few years ago'; *w. a.* instead of, for. for þām, for þy *av.* therefore; for þām (*pe*) *cj.* because.
fōr¹ *f.* journey, march, expedition [faran].
fōr² *see faran.*
for-·bærnan *wv.* 1 *tr.* burn (up).
for-·bēodan *sv.* 2 *w. d.* forbid.
for-·ceorfan *sv.* 3 cut off.
ford *m.* ford. 13.
for-·dilgian *wv.* 2 destroy.
for-·dōn *v.* destroy.
for-·ealdod *aj.* aged [*p. pt. of forealdian* 'grow old'].
fore-·scēawian *wv.* 2 pre-ordain, appoint; provide.
fore-·secgān *wv.* 3 say before; se foresēgda 'the aforesaid'.
fore-·sprecan *sv.* 5 say before; se foresprecena 'the aforesaid'.
for-·giefan *sv.* 5 *w. d.* give, grant; forgive.
forht *aj.* afraid.

forhtian *wv.* 2 fear, be afraid of.
for·hwéga *av.* somewhere.
for·lætan *sv.* 7 leave, abandon.
for·léosan *sv.* 2 lose. 63.
for·líger *n.* fornication.
forma *aj. sp.* first. 34, 38.
for·nimán *sv.* 4 carry off; destroy, devour.
for·séon *sv.* 5 despise, scorn.
for·sléan *sv.* 6 cut through.
for·standan *sv.* 6 (stand before), protect, defend.
forþ *av.* forth, forwards, on, out; also.
forþ·férān *wv.* 1 depart, die.
forþ·gān *v.* proceed, pass on.
forþ·genge *aj.* thriving, advancing.
for·weorþan *sv.* 3 perish, be lost.
fót *m.* foot. 22.
frægn see *frígnan*.
fram *prp. w. d.* from; *agent w. passive by*.
Francan *m. pl.* Franks.
Franc-land *n.* the land of the Franks, France.
frécen-nes *f.* danger.
frem-ful-nes *f.* benefit.
fremian *wv.* 2 benefit, help.
ge·fremman *wv.* 1 perform, do, commit. 70, 71.
fréond *m.* friend. 24.
fréond-scipe *m.* friendship. 13.
frígnan *sv.* 3 ask. 64.
fríþ *m.* peace; *fríþ nimán* 'make peace'.
ge·fríþian *wv.* 2 protect, shelter.
frófor *f.* comfort. 17.
fruma *m.* beginning; on *fruman* 'at first'.
fugol *m.* bird. 13.
fugol-wielle *aj.* rich in birds.
fuhton see *feohtan*.
ful *aj.* foul, impure.
full *aj. w. g.* full.
full *av.* entirely, very.
fullian *wv.* 2 baptize.
ful·líce *av.* fully.
fulluht *m.* baptism [fullian].
fultum *m.* help; forces, troops.
ge·fultumian *wv.* 2 *w. d.* help.

fundē see *findan*.
furþurn *av.* even.
fús *aj.* (eager); hastening.
fylgan *wv.* 1 *w. d.* follow.
fyllan *wv.* 1 fill, fulfil [full]. 70, 71.
ge·fylled-nes *f.* fulfilment.
fýr *n.* fire.
fyrmeſt *aj. sp.* first, chief. 34.

ge·gádrian *wv.* 2 gather. 73.
gær̄s *n.* grass.
gafeluc *m.* spear, javelin.
gafol *n.* interest, profit.
gamen *n.* sport.
gān *v. go.* 80.
ge·gān *v.* gain, conquer. 81.
gangan, *gangende* see *gān*. 68, 80.
gár-secg *m.* ocean, sea.
gást *m.* spirit; *se hálga gást* 'The Holy Ghost'. 13.
gást-líc *aj.* spiritual.
gást-líce *av.* spiritually.
gatu see *geat*.
gé *cj.* and; *gé . . . gé* both . . . and.
gé see *bū*.
geaf, *gēafe,* *gēafon* see *giefan*.
gealga *m.* gallows.
gēar *n.* year. 15.
gēara *av.* formerly, of yore.
geard *m.* enclosure, court. 13.
gearu *aj.* ready. 29.
geat *n. (pl. gatu)* gate. 15.
géo *av.* formerly; *géo gēara* 'long ago'.
geogob *f.* youth.
geolca *m.* yolk.
géomrung *f.* grief, lamentation.
geond *prp. w. a.* through, throughout; as far as, up to.
geong *aj.* young. 32.
geongling *m.* youth, child.
georn *aj.* eager.
georne *av.* eagerly, earnestly.
georn-líce *av.* zealously.
Germánia *f.* Germany. 27.
giefan *sv.* 5 give. 66.
giefsta *f. pl.* marriage, wedding [*giefan*].
giefu *f.* gift; grace (of God) [*giefan*]. 17.

gieldan *sv.* 3 pay. 64.
gierela *m.* clothing; garment.
ge-·gierwan *wv.* 1 (prepare), equip, gird; dress [*gearu*]. 71.
giet *av.* yet, still; further, besides; **nū giet** still, **pā giet** yet, as yet.
gif *cj.* if.
glæd *aj.* glad. 29.
glēaw *aj.* prudent, wise.
glēd *f.* glowing coal; fire.
glēngan *wv.* 1 adorn; trim (lamp).
gnidán *sv.* 1 rub, pound. 62.
god *m.* God; *nm.* god. 15.
gōd *aj.* good; *cp.* **betera**, *sp.* betst. 29, 30, 33.
gōd-cund-nes *f.* divinity; deity.
gōd-nes *f.* goodness. 17.
god-spell *n.* gospel [note on V, 11].
gold *n.* gold. 15.
gold-hord *m.* treasure.
gōs *f.* goose. 22.
grædig *aj.* greedy.
græg *aj.* grey.
Grēcas *m. pl.* Greeks.
grēne *aj.* green.
grētan *wv.* 1 greet, salute.
grindan *sv.* 3 grind. 64.
grist-bitung *f.* gnashing of teeth.
grōwan *sv.* 7 grow. 68.
grund *m.* bottom.
grymetian *wv.* 2 roar, rage.
guma *m.* man. 11.
gylden *aj.* golden [gold].

habban *wv.* 3 have; take; get. 74.
ge-·habban *wv.* 3 contain.
hād *m.* rank, order; sex.
ge-·hādod *aj.* ordained, in orders, clerical [*p. pt. of hādian* 'ordain'].
hæbbe *see habban.*
hæfde, -on, **hæfp** *see habban.*
hæftan *wv.* 1 hold fast.
hæft-nied *f.* subjection.
hælan *wv.* 1 heal, cure; save [*hāl*].
hælend *m.* Saviour. 25, 82.
hælu *f.* salvation [*hāl*].

hæpse *f.* hasp, fastening.
hæs *f.* command. 18.
hæte *f.* heat [*hāt*].
hætt *see hātan.*
hæþ *f.* heath.
hæþen *aj.* heathen [*hæþ*].
hagolian *wv.* 2 hail.
ge-·hāl *aj.* whole, uninjured. 29.
hālga *m.* saint [*weak form of hālig*].
ge-·hālgian *wv.* 2 hallow, consecrate.
hālian *wv.* 2 *int.* heal.
hālig *aj.* holy, sacred, consecrated. 29.
hālig-dōm *m.* holy object, relic.
hālwende *aj.* salutary, useful.
hālwend-nes *f.* salubrity.
hām *m.* home. 13. *av.* home(wards). 85.
hām-weard *av.* home(wards).
hand *f.* hand; side. 19.
hand-cweorn *f.* hand-mill.
hangian *wv.* 2 *int.* hang [*hōn*].
hāt *aj.* hot.
hātan *sv.* 7 command, order; call, name. 68, 95.
ge-·hātan *sv.* 7 promise.
hätte *passive of hātan.* 53.
hē *prn.* he, it. 44.
hēafod *n.* head. 15.
hēafod-mann *m.* (head-man), ruler, captain.
hēah *aj.* high, exalted; *sp.* hiehst. 29, 32.
hēah-fæder *m.* patriarch.
healdan *sv.* 7 hold, keep; preserve, maintain; observe. 68.
healf *f.* half; side. 17.
healf *aj.* half. 41.
healf-nacod *aj.* half-naked.
hēa-lič *aj.* exalted [*hēah*].
heall *f.* hall.
heard *aj.* hard; strong; severe.
hēawan *sv.* 7 hew. 68.
hebban *sv.* 6 raise, lift up. 67.
hefe *see hebban.*
hefe-lič *aj.* heavy, severe.
hefel-præd *m.* thread (for weaving).
hefig *aj.* heavy.
hefig-nes *f.* weight, burden.

hefiġ-tieme *aj.* burdensome.
helpan *sv.* 3 help. 64.
ge-·hende *aj. w. d.* near, at hand
 [hand].
hēo *see hē.*
heofon *m.* heaven; *often in pl.*:
 heofona rīce 'the kingdom of
 heaven'.
heofone *f.* heaven.
heofon-līc *aj.* heavenly, of hea-
 ven.
hēold, hēoldon *see healdan.*
heonan *av.* hence, from here.
heorot *m.* hart, stag.
heorte *f.* heart. 11.
hēr *av.* here; hither; **hēr-·æfter**
 hereafter, after this.
here *m.* army, raiding force. 13.
here-hýþ *f.* booty.
here-rēaf *n.* spoil, booty.
here-toga *m.* army-leader,
 general [toga from tēon].
here-wiċ *n. pl.* camp.
ge-·hergian *wv.* 2 ravage, plun-
 der [here]. 73.
hergung *f.* ravaging, pillage.
herian *wv.* 1 praise. 71.
herige *see here.*
hēt, hēton *see hātan.*
hete *m.* hatred. 13.
hie *see hē.*
hieġ *n.* hay.
hiehst *see hēah.*
hielt *see healdan.*
hiera *see hē.*
ge-·hieran *wv.* 1 hear; *w. d.*
 obey, follow. 70, 71, 81.
hierde *m.* shepherd, herdsman.
 13.
hierd-riāden *f.* guardianship.
 17.
hiere *see hē.*
ge-·hier-sum *aj. w. d.* obedient,
 subject [hieran]. 29.
ge-·hier-sumian *wv. 2 w. d.*
 obey; *tr.* subjugate.
ge-·hier-sum-nes *f.* obedience.
him, hine *see hē.*
hired *m.* family, household.
his *see hē.*
hiw *n.* appearance, form; hue.
hlæder *f.* ladder.

hlæfdīge *f.* lady [hläf]. 11.
hläf *m.* loaf; bread. 13.
hläford *m.* lord, master [hläf]
 13.
hleahtor *m.* laughter.
hlēapan *sv.* 7 leap. 68.
hlýdan *wv.* 1 make a noise, shout
 [hlūd 'loud'].
hnappian *wv.* 2 doze.
hōf *see hebban.*
holt *n.* wood.
hōn *sv.* 7 *tr.* hang [hangian]. 68.
horn *m.* horn.
ge-·horsian *wv.* 2 provide with
 horses.
hræding *f.* haste, hurry.
hræd-licē *av.* quickly.
hrægl *n.* dress, clothing.
hran *m.* whale.
hraþe *av.* quickly.
hrēod *n.* reed.
hrēosan *sv.* 2 fall. 63.
hrēowan *sv.* 2 often *impers.* *w. d.*
 ruc, repent. 63.
hrīeman *wv.* 1 shout, cry out.
hrinan *sv.* 1 touch. 62.
hſíper *n.* head of cattle, ox.
hruron *see hrēosan.*
hrycg *m.* back.
hryre *m.* fall [hrēosan]. 13.
hū *av.* how.
hū-licē *aj.* what kind of.
hund *n. w. g.* hundred. 38, 40.
hund-eahta-tiġ *num.* eighty.
hund-nigon-tiġ *num.* ninety.
hund-sefon-tiġ *num.* seventy.
hungriġ *aj.* hungry.
huniġ *n.* honey.
huntung *f.* hunting.
hūru *av.* especially; indeed.
hūs *n.* house. 15.
hux-licē *av.* ignominiously, with
 insult.
hwā *prn. interrog.* who; *indef.*
 anyone, someone. 49, 51.
ge-·hwā *prn.* everyone. 51.
hwæl *m.* whale. 13.
hwāem *see hwā, hwæt.*
hwær *av. cj.* where; *swā* hwær
 swā 'wherever'.
ge-·hwær *av.* everywhere.
hwæs *see hwā, hwæt.*

hwæt¹ *prn.* interrog. what; *indef.* anything, something; *interj.* lo! now, well. 49, 51.

hwæt² *aj.* vigorous; braye. 29.

hwæte *m.* wheat..

hwæper *cj.* whether; **hwæper** *be* introduces a direct question.

ge-·hwæper *prn. aj.* either, each, both; *cj.* gehwæper **gé** . . . **gé** both . . . and.

hwæpre *av.* however.

hwanon *av. cj.* whence.

hwelc *prn. aj.* interrog. which, what, what kind of; *indef.* any(one), some(one). 51.

ge-·hwelc *prn.* each, everyone.

hwil *f.* while, time.

hwilum *av.* formerly, once.

hwit *aj.* white.

hwite *n.* white (of egg).

hwon instrumental of **hwæt**; for hwon why.

hwý *av.* why [*inst. of hwæt*].

hycean *wv.* 3 think. 74.

hýdan *wv.* 1 hide.

hýrian *wv.* 2 hire.

ic *prn.* I. 42.

idel *aj.* idle; useless, vain; on idel 'in vain'.

ieг *f.* island.

ieг-land *n.* island.

ieldan *wv.* 1 delay, be late [eald].

ielde *m. pl.* men. 14.

ieldra see **eald.**

ieldran *m. pl.* ancestors [ieldra]. 11.

ieldu *f.* age. 20.

ierfe-nurnia *m.* heir, successor.

iernan *sv.* 3 run, flow. 64.

ierre *aj.* angry.

il *m.* hedgehog.

ilca *aj.* same (*always with def. art. or demons., and so weak*).

in *prp. w. d. a.* in; into. 96.

inn *av.* in (*of motion*).

innan *prp. w. d. a.* within, in; into; *av.* within.

inne *av.* within, inside; *prp.* (*after relative þe*) in.

in-tó *prp. w. d.* into.

Iotan *m. pl.* Jutes.

is *see wesan.*

ísern *n.* iron.

itst *see etan.*

Iüdēas, Iüdēi *m. pl.* Jews.

Iüdēisc *aj.* Jewish; þā Iüdēiscan 'the Jews'.

lā *interj.* oh! lā lēof 'sir'.

lāc *n.* gift; offering, sacrifice.

lād-þéow *m.* guide [lādan].

ge-·læccan *wv.* 1 seize; catch. 71.

ge-·lædan *wv.* 1 lead; carry, bring, take. 71.

Læden *n.* Latin [*L. latinum*].

Læden-þoc *f.* Latin book.

læg, lægon *see licgan.*

lærān *wv.* 1 *w. double a.* teach, educate [lär].

ge-·læred *aj.* learned [*p. pt. of lærān*].

læs *f. (g. d. læswe)* pasture. 17.

læssa, læst *see lýtel.*

lætan *sv.* 7 let; leave. 68.

læwede *aj.* lay; unlearned.

laf *f.* remnant, remains; tō läfe beon 'to remain, be left' [(be)-lifan]. 17.

lamb *n.* lamb. 26.

ge-·lamp *see gé-·limpan.*

land *n.* land, country. 15.

land-folc *n.* people of a country.

land-léode *m. pl.* people of a country.

lang *aj.* long; *cp. lengra.* 32.

lange *av.* long, for a long time; *cp. leng.* 36.

lang-liće *av.* for a long time.

lär *f.* teaching; doctrine. 17.

läréow *m.* teacher [lär and þéow].

late *av.* late.

ge-·laþian *wv.* 2 invite.

lead *n.* lead.

leaf *n.* leaf.

ge-·læafa *m.* belief, faith. 11.

ge-·læaf-full *aj.* believing, pious, devout.

leah *m.* clearing; wood.

leahtor *m.* vice, sin, crime.

læas *aj.* false, untruthful; *in composition -less.*

læat *see lütan.*

lecgan *wv.* 1 lay [licgan]. 71

ge-lendan *wv.* 1 go; land [land].
leng *see lange.*
lengra *see lang.*
lēo *mf.* lion, lioness [*L.*]. 11.
lēod *f.* nation, people.
lēode *m. pl.* people. 14.
lēof *aj.* dear, beloved; pleasant;
 mē lēofre wære 'I would rather'
 [lufu]. 31.
leofaf, **leofode** *see libban.*
lēoh̄t¹ *aj.* light, bright, clear.
lēoh̄t² *aj.* light (in weight).
lēoht-fæt *n.* (light-vessel), lamp.
leornian *wv.* 2 learn. 73.
lēt, **lēton** *see lätan.*
libban *wv.* 3 live. 74.
līc *n.* body, corpse. 15.
ge-līc *aj. w. d.* like.
ge-līcē *av.* likewise, in like
 manner, alike, equally.
licgan *sv.* 5 lie. 66.
lic-hama *m.* body.
lician *wv.* 2 *w. d.* please.
ge-līefan *wv.* 1 believe [ge-
 lēafa]. 71.
lif *n.* life.
ge-limp *n.* event, emergency.
ge-limpan *sv.* 3 happen. 64.
lip *see licgan.*
loc *n.* lock, bar.
locc *m.* lock of hair.
locen *see lūcan.*
lof *n.* praise, glory.
ge-lōgian *wv.* 2 place; occupy,
 settle, furnish.
ge-lōm *aj.* frequent.
ge-lōme *av.* often.
loslan *wv.* 2 *w. d.* be lost; him
 losaþ 'he loses' [(for)lēosan].
 73.
lūcan *sv.* 2 close, lock, fasten.
 63.
lucon *see lūcan.*
lufian *wv.* 2 love. 73.
lufu *f.* love [lēof]. 17.
Lunden-burg *f.* London [*L.*
 Lundonia].
lust *m.* desire; pleasure.
ge-lust-ful-līcē *av.* gladly,
 heartily.
lūtan *sv.* 2 bend, stoop. 63.
lyft *f.* air; *pl.* climate. 18.

lyre *m.* loss. 13.
lȳt *av.* little. 37.
lȳtel *aj.* little; *cp.* lāssa, *sp.*
 lāest. 33.
lȳtlum *av.* little by little [*d. of*
lȳtel].
lȳper-lið *aj.* bad, poor, mean.
lȳpre *aj.* bad, wicked.

mā *indecl.* more [*cp.* of micle].
macian *wv.* 2 make, do. 73.
mād *f.* (*g. d.* mādwe) meadow.
 17.
mæg *ppv.* can, am/is able. 77.
mægen *n.* strength, capacity;
 virtue [mæg].
mægp *f.* family; tribe, nation;
 generation.
ge-māne *aj.* common; him ge-
 mānne 'between them'.
māre *aj.* famous, glorious, great
 (*metaphorically*). 31.
ge-māre *n.* border; territory.
mārsian *wv.* 2 extol, celebrate
 [māre].
mārþu *f.* glory [māre].
mæsse *f.* mass [*L.* missa]. 11.
mæsse-prēost *m.* mass-priest.
māst *see micel.*
māwþ *see māwan.*
māgister *m.* master, teacher
 [*L.*].
māgon *see mæg.*
man *indef.* one [mann]. 51.
mān *n.* wickedness.
mān-dād *f.* evil deed; sin,
 crime.
mān-full *aj.* wicked, evil.
maniȝ *aj.* many. 29.
ge-maniȝ-fieldan *wv.* 1 multi-
 ply.
mann *m.* man; person. 22.
manna *m.* man.
mann-rāden *f.* allegiance.
māra *see micel.*
martyr *m.* martyr [*L.*].
māþm *m.* treasure. 13.
māþm-fæt *n.* precious vessel.
māwan *sv.* 7 mow. 68.
mē *see ic.*
mearc *f.* boundary. 17.
mēd *f.* reward, pay.

med-micel *aj.* small, short.
menigu *f.* multitude. 20.
menn *see mann.*
mennisc *aj.* human [mɛnn].
mennisc-nes *f.* incarnation.
meolc *f.* milk.
mere-grota *m.* pearl [*L. margarita*].
mere-swín *n.* porpoise.
mergen *m.* morning [*morgen*].
merian *wv.* 2 purify, clarify.
metan *sv.* 5 measure. 66.
ge-métan *wv.* 1 meet; find
[gɛmöt]. 70.
mete *m.* (*pl. mettas*) food. 13.
micel *aj.* great, much; *cp. māra*,
1 sp. *mæst.* 29, 33.
micel-nes *f.* size, bulk.
micle *av.* greatly, much, (by)
far; *cp. mā* more, rather.
miclum *av.* greatly, much [*d. of*
micell.].
mid *prp. w. d. i.* with; by means
of; *mid þām þe*, *mid þy cj.*
when, as; since.
midd *aj.* mid, middle.
middan-geard *m.* world [*lit.*
'middle enclosure'].
Middel-ngle *m. pl.* Middle
Angles.
Mierce *m. pl.* Mercians [*mearc*].
14.
miht *f.* might, strength, power;
virtue [mæg̊]. 18.
mihte, mihton *see mæg̊.*
mihtig *aj.* mighty, strong.
mīl *f.* mile [*L. milia (passuum)*].
mīlde *aj.* (mild), merciful.
mild-heort *aj.* (mild-hearted),
merciful.
mīn *prn. aj.* my, mine. 42, 46.
missen-lic *aj.* various, diverse.
mīpan *sv.* 1 hide. 62.
mōd *n.* heart, mind, spirit. 15.
mōdig *aj.* proud.
mōdig-nes *f.* pride.
mōdor *f.* mother. 23.
molde *f.* (mould), earth.
mōna *m.* moon. 11.
mōnaþ *m. (pl. mōnaþ)* month
[mōna]. 13.
mōr *m.* moor, waste land.

morgen *m.* morning.
morp *n.* violent deed, crime.
moru *f.* root.
mōste *see mōt.*
mōt *ppv.* may. 77.
ge-mōt *n.* meeting. 15.
ge-munan *ppv.* remember. 77.
munt *m.* mountain, hill [*L. mon-*
tem].
munuc *m.* monk [*L. monachus*].
munuc-lif *n.* (monastic. life),
monastery.
murcnian *wv.* 2 grumble, com-
plain.
murnan *sv.* 3 mourn. 64.
mūs *f.* mouse. 22.
muscle *f.* mussel [*L. musculus*].
mūþ *m.* mouth.
mūþa *m.* mouth of a river,
estuary [mūþ]. 11.
ge-myndig *aj. w. g.* mindful.
mynetere *m.* money-changer
[mynet 'coin' from *L. moneta*].
mynster *n.* monastery [*L. mon-*
asterium]. 15.
mynster-mann *m.* monk.

nā *av.* not, no [= ne ā].
nabban = ne habban.
nædre *f.* adder, snake. 11.
næfde, næfst, næfþ = ne hæfde,
etc.
næfre *av.* never [= ne æfre].
nægel *m.* nail (in both senses).
13.
næniig *prn. aj.* none, no [= ne
æniig].
næs = ne wæs.
näh = ne āh.
näht, nän-wiht, näh-wiht *prn.*
w. g. (naught), nothing; *av.*
not (at all).
näht-nes *f.* worthlessness.
nam *see niman.*
nama *m.* name. 11.
nämon *see niman.*
nän *prn. aj.* none, no [= ne än].
nän-wiht, näh-wiht *see näht.*
nät = ne wät.
näwþer *prn.* neither; *cj. næwþer*
ne . . . ne neither . . . nor
[= ne ähwæþer ('either')].

ne *av.* not; *cj.* nor; **ne . . . ne** neither . . . nor.
nēah *av.* (*aj.* *in cp.* and *sp.*) near; *sp.* **niehst:** *æt niehstan* 'at last'. 34.
nearo-liče *av.* (narrowly), briefly, summarily.
nearu *aj.* narrow.
nēat *n.* beast; *pl.* cattle.
nēa-wist *fm.* neighbourhood [nēah, wesan].
nemnan *wv.* 1 name, call [nama]. 71.
nēod-liče *av.* carefully, diligently.
nerian *wv.* 1 save. 71.
nese *av.* no.
nicor *m.* water-monster; hippopotamus.
nied *f.* necessity. 18.
niede *av.* of necessity, by compulsion.
niedunga *av.* of necessity.
niehst see **nēah**.
nieten *n.* animal, beast [nēat].
nigon *num.* nine.
nigon-tēoþa *aj.* nineteenth.
nigōþa *aj.* ninth.
niht *f.* night. 22.
niht-gēngā *m.* night-prowler.
ge-niman *sv.* 4 take, capture; pluck. 65.
nis = ne is.
nīwan *av.* newly, lately.
niwe *aj.* new.
ge-nōg *aj.* enough.
nolde = ne wolde.
norþ *av.* northwards; *aj.* northern.
Norþ(an)-hymbre *m. pl.* Northumbrians [*L.* *Humbræ*]. 14.
norþ-dæl *m.* northern part, north.
Norþ-hymbra-land *n.* Northumbria. 27.
Norþ-wēalas *m. pl.* the Welsh.
nos-þyrel *n.* nostril.
nū *av.* now, just now; *cj. causal* now that, since.
numen see **niman**.
ge-nyht-sum *aj.* abundant.
nyle, nyll = ne wil(l)e. 79.

nyste = ne wiste. 76.
nyt-nes *f.* use, benefit.
nyton = ne witon. 76.
nytt aj, useful, profitable. 29.

of *prp. w. d.* from, from among, of, of motion, origin, privation, release, &c.; partitive of ēowrum ele 'some of your oil'; concerning.
of-drædd *aj.* afraid [*p. pt.* of ofdrædan 'dread'].
ðfer *m.* bank.
offer *prp. w. d. a.* over; on; about; time after; during.
offer-hergian *wv.* 2 ravage, overrun.
offer-sāwan *sv.* 7 sow over.
ge-offrian *wv.* 2 offer, sacrifice [*L.* offerre].
offrung *f.* offering, sacrifice.
of-slēan *sv.* 6 kill, slay; destroy.
of-snīþan *sv.* 1 slaughter.
of-spring *m.* offspring [springan].
oft *gv.* often.
of-teon *sv.* 2 *w. d. of person and g. of thing* deny, deprive of.
of-pyrst *aj.* thirsty [*p. pt.* of ofþyrstan from þurst].
of-wundrod *aj.* astonished.
ð-læcung *f.* flattery, cajolery.
on *prp. w. d. a.* on; in; into; hostility against: on hie fuhton; time in. 96.
on-ælan *wv.* 1 kindle, light.
on-biergan *wv.* 1 *w. g.* taste, eat.
on-cnāwan *sv.* 7 perceive, understand, recognize.
on-drædan *sv.* 7 and *wv.* 1 dread, fear. 68.
on-fōn *sv.* 7 often *w. d.* receive.
on-gēan *prp. w. d. a.* towards, to meet; opposite; hostility against; *av.* back.
on-gēaton see **on-gietan**.
on-gietan *sv.* 5 perceive, see. 66.
on-ginnan *sv.* 3 begin; sometimes pleonastic—note on III 7. 64.

on-·gunnon *see on-·ginnan.*

on-·lūcan *sv.* 2 unlock. 81.

on-·middan *prp.* *w.* *d.* in the midst of.

on-·styrian *wv.* 1 stir, move.

on-·uppan *prp.* *w.* *d.* upon, above.

on-·weg *av.* away.

open-līcē *av.* openly, publicly.

ōra¹ *m.* bank, shore.

ōra² *m.* ore.

orgel-līcē *av.* proudly, insolently.

or-mæte *aj.* immense, boundless [metan].

or-sorg *aj.* unconcerned, care-less.

op̄ *prp.* *w.* *a.* until, up to, as far as; **op̄ bæt** *cj.* until.

ōþer *prn.* *aj.* (*always strong*) second; other; one or other of two. 4ⁿ.

opþe *cj.* or; **opþe . . . opþe** either . . . or.

oxa *m.* ox. 11.

panne *f.* pan.

pāpa *m.* pope [*L.*].

pening *m.* penny.

Peohtas *m. pl.* Picts.

Philistēi *m. pl.* Philistines [*L.*].

Philistēisc *aj.* Philistine.

pistol *m.* letter [*L. epistola*].

plegian *wv.* 2 play.

pleoh *n.* risk, responsibility.

plēo-lič *aj.* dangerous, hazard-ous.

post *m.* post [*L. postis*].

préost *m.* priest [*L. presbyter*].

pund *n.* pound [*L. pondus*].

rā *m.* (*g. pl.* rāna) roe.

racen-·teág *f.* chain.

rād *see rīdan.*

ge-·rād *n.* reckoning, account; reason, judgement.

ræcan *wv.* 1 reach. 71.

ge-·ræcan *wv.* 1 get at, seize.

rād *m.* advice, counsel; what is advisable, plan of action; him rād þūhte 'it seemed advisable to him'.

rēdan *wv.* 1 read.

rād-bora *m.* adviser [beran].

ramm *m.* ram.

rāp *m.* rope. 13.

rās *see rīsan.*

rēad *aj.* red.

reahte *see reccan².*

rettan¹ *wv.* 1 *w. g.* (*pret. rōhte*) reck, care. 72.

reccan² *wv.* 1 (*pret. reahte*) tell, narrate. 72.

ge-·reced-nes *f.* narrative.

ge-·rēfa *m.* reeve, officer, bailiff, sheriff. 11.

regen *m.* rain.

ge-·reord *n.* language.

rēþe *aj.* fierce, cruel.

riče¹ *n.* kingdom; kingship, sovereignty, rule. 16.

riče² *aj.* powerful, mighty, of high rank.

ričetere *n.* (power), arrogance.

ricsian *wv.* 2 rule.

rīdan *sv.* 1 ride. 62.

rīf *aj.* fierce.

rīftere *m.* reaper.

riht *aj.* right, just; righteous.

ge-·rihtan *wv.* 1 correct.

riht-wīs *aj.* righteous.

riht-wīs-nes *f.* righteousness.

rim *mn.* number.

rīnan *wv.* 1 rain [regen].

ripan *sv.* 1 reap. 62.

ripere *m.* reaper.

rip-tima *m.* (reaping-time), harvest.

rīsan *sv.* 1 rise. 62.

rōd *f.* cross. 17.

rōhte *see reccan¹.*

Rōmāne *m. pl.* Romans.

rōwan *sv.* 7 row. 68.

sacan *sv.* 6 quarrel. 67.

sāē *mf.* (*d. sg.* sāē) sea.

sāēd *n.* seed.

sægd, -e, -on, **sægþ** *see sec-gan.*

sāēl *m.* time, occasion.

ge-·sāēlig *aj.* happy, blessed.

ge-·sāēlig-līcē *av.* happily, blessedly.

sæt, **sæton** *see sittan.*

sæ-wiht *f.* sea-animal.
 sāgol *m.* rod, staff.
 ge-*sammian* *wv.* 2 *tr.* collect, assemble.
 samod *av.* together, also, as well.
 sanct *m.*, sancte *f.* saint [*L.* sanctus, -a].
 sand *f.* dish of food [sendan].
 sand-čeosol *m.* sand (*lit.* sand-gravel).
 sār *n.* pain, soreness.
 sāriġ *aj.* sorry, sorrowful, sad.
 sāwan *sv.* 7 sow. 68.
sāwe *see* sēon.
sāwol *f.* soul. 17.
sāwon *see* sēon.
scacan *sv.* 6 shake. 67.
scadu *f.* shade.
scamu *f.* shame; tō scame 'with ignominy'.
scarfian *wv.* 2 scrape, shred.
scēaf¹ *m.* sheaf, bundle.
scēaf² *see* scūfan.
scēaf-mālum *av.* in sheaves. 82.
scéal *ppv.* ought to, have to, must; shall. 77, 92, 94.
scēap *n.* sheep. 15.
sceatt *m.* (tribute), money; coin.
scēawere *m.* witness.
*ge-*scēawian** *wv.* 2 look at; examine, observe; read. 73.
scēawung *f.* seeing, examination.
scēotan *sv.* 2 shoot. 63.
sciieldan *wv.* 1 protect.
*ge-*scieppan** *sv.* 6 create. 67.
scieran *sv.* 4 cut. 65.
scīnan *sv.* 1 shine. 62.
scip *n.* ship. 15.
scip-here *m.* fleet.
scir *f.* shire. 17.
scofen *see* scūfan.
scolde, scoldon *see* sceal.
scōp *see* scieppan.
scoren *see* scieran.
Scot-land *n.* Ireland.
Scottas *m. pl.* Scots, Irish.
scotung *f.* shooting, shot; missile.
scræf *n.* cave.

ge-*scrēpe* *aj.* fit, suitable.
scrin *n.* shrine [*L.* scrinium].
scrincan, *sv.* 3 shrink. 64.
scūfan, *sv.* 2 push. 63.
sculon *see* scēotan.
scuton *see* scēotan.
scylen *see* sceal.
scypen *f.* cattle-shed.
se, sē *prn. art.* that; the; *rel.* who. 47.
seah *see* sēon.
sealde *see* sellan.
sealt-sēaþ *m.* salt spring.
sēaþ *m.* pit; well.
Seaxe *m. pl.* Saxons. 14.
sēcan *wv.* 1 seek; visit, come to, go to; attack. 72.
*ge-*sēcan** *wv.* 1 come to, in-vade.
secgan *wv.* 3 say. 74.
seldan *av.* seldom.
sēlest *av.* sp. best. 37.
self *prn.* self, my-, him- (&c.) self; *aj.* same; very. 45.
*ge-*sellan** *wv.* 1 give; sell. 70, 72.
semninga *av.* suddenly.
senlān *wv.* 1 send. 70, 71.
sēo *see* se.
sefon *num.* seven.
sefoþa *aj.* seventh.
seolcen *aj.* silken.
seolfor *n.* silver.
seolh *m.* seal.
sēon *sv.* 5 see. 60, 66.
*ge-*sēon** *sv.* 5 see; catch sight of; look.
sēohan *sv.* 2 boil. 63.
sēow, sēowe *see* sāwan.
setl *n.* (seat), place to live, habitation.
*ge-*set-nes** *f.* decree, law; narrative [settan].
*ge-*settan** *wv.* 1 set, place; appoint; establish; occupy; compose. 71.
sewen *see* sēon.
sibb *f.* peace.
sie *see* wesan.
sierwung *f.* artifice, treachery.
six *num.* six.
sixta *aj.* sixth.
sixx-tiene *num.* sixteen.

sieξ-tiξ num. sixty.
sige m. victory; sige niman 'gain the victory'. 13.
sige-fæst aj. victorious. 29.
ge-·sihþ f. sight; vision, dream [gesēon].
silfren aj. silver.
simle av. always, ever, continually.
sind(on) see wesan.
sinu f. sinew.
sittan sv. 5 sit; settle, stay. 66.
ge-·sittan sv. 5 take possession of, occupy.
sib̄ m. journey.
sib̄-fæt mn. journey; way.
sibian wv. 2 journey, go.
sib̄pan av. afterwards, since, then; *cj.* after, when.
slægen see slēan.
slæp m. sleep; on slæpe 'asleep'.
slæpan sv. 7 sleep. 68.
slaw aj. slow, slothful.
slēan sv. 6 strike; slay, kill. 67.
slecg m. hammer [slēan].
slege m. killing, slaughter [slēan]. 13.
slēp, slēpon see slæpan.
slitan sv. 1 tear. 62.
slög, slögön see slēan.
smale av. small, finely.
smēagan wv. 2 consider, think. 73.
smēocan sv. 2 smoke. 63.
smylt-nes f. mildness.
snāw m. snow.
snican sv. 1 creep. 62.
snīpan sv. 1 cut. 62.
snīwan wv. 1 snow.
snotor aj. wise, prudent.
sōcen see sacan.
sōhte, sōhton see sēcan.
sōna av. at once, then; sōna swā, sōna þæs þe 'as soon as'.
sorg f. sorrow.
sōþ¹ n. truth.
sōþ² aj. true.
sōþ-liče av. truly, indeed; in reality.
spadu f. spade [*L.* spatha].
spearwa m. sparrow.
spell n. narrative, discourse.

spōwan sv. 7 succeed. 68.
spræc f. speech, language; conversation [sprecan]. 17.
sprecan sv. 5 speak. 66.
sprengān wv. 1 (scatter), sow [springan].
springān sv. 3 spring. 64.
stæf m. staff; letter of the alphabet. 13.
stæf-cræft m. the art of letters, grammar.
stænen aj. (of) stone [stān].
stān m. stone, rock. 13.
standan sv. 6 stand. 67.
steall mn. position, site.
stede m. place. 13, 14.
stefn f. voice.
stelan sv. 4 steal. 65.
stent, stentst see standan.
steorra m. star. 11.
stieran wv. 1 *w. d.* restrain.
stigan sv. 1 ascend. 62.
ge-·stillan wv. 1 stop, restrain.
stöd, stödon see standan.
storm m. storm, tempest.
stōw f. place; passage (in a book); religious house. 17.
stræl fm. arrow.
stræt f. street, road [*L.* strata (*uia*)].
strang aj. strong, powerful; *cp.* strengra. 32.
strēdan wv. 1 strew, scatter, sow.
strengra see strang.
strengþu f. strength [strang]. 20.
ge-·strēon n. (acquisition), possession.
ge-·strienan wv. 1 gain [ge-strēon].
strūtian wv. 2 struggle (? — note on VI, 171).
styccē n. piece. 16.
sum prn. aj. a certain (one), one, a; some. 29, 51.
sumor m. (*d. sg.* sumera, -e) summer. 13.
Sumor-sæte m. pl. men of Somerset. 14.
sund n. swimming.
ge-·sund aj. sound, healthy; un-corrupted.

ge-sund-full *adj.* safe and sound.
sunne *f.* sun. 11.
sunu *m.* son. 19.
sūp *av.* south, southwards.
sūhan *av.* from the south.
sūp-dæl *m.* southern part, south.
Sūp-peohtas *m. pl.* Southern Picts.
Sūprige *m. pl.* (the people of) Surrey.
Sūp-seaxe *m. pl.* South Saxons.
swā *av.* so; **swā swā** as, like;
swā . . . swā *correl.* as . . . as;
swā þæt so that, inasmuch as.
swāc *see swican.*
swāsendu *n. pl.* food, meal.
swā-þeah *av.* however, nevertheless.
swefn *n.* sleep; dream.
swelc *prn. adj.* such.
swelce *av.* as if, as it were, as, like; likewise; **swelce ēac** 'also, moreover'.
sweltan *sv.* 3 die. 64.
swenčan *wv.* 1 afflict, harass [swincan].
sweng *m.* stroke, blow [swingan].
swēor *m.* pillar.
swēora *m.* neck. 11.
sweord *n.* sword.
sweord-bora *m.* sword-bearer [beran].
sweostor *f.* sister. 23.
ge-sweostor *f. pl.* sisters.
sweotol *adj.* clear, evident, manifest.
ge-sweotolian *wv.* 2 show, indicate.
sweotolung *f.* sign, manifestation.
swerian *sv.* 6 swear. 67.
swēte *adj.* sweet.
ge-swican *sv.* 1 (fail, fall short), cease; betray. 62.
swic-dōm *m.* deceit, fraud [swican].
swicol *adj.* deceitful, treacherous.
swift *adj.* swift.
swigian *wv.* 2 be silent.
swimman *sv.* 3 swim. 64.
swincan *sv.* 3 labour, toil. 64.
swingan *sv.* 3 beat, scourge. 64.
swingel *f.* stroke [swingan].
swipu *f.* whip, scourge.
swipe *aw.* very, much, greatly, strongly, violently; *cp.* **swipor** rather, more.
swip-lič *adj.* very great, immense.
swulton *see sweltan.*
swuncon *see swincan.*
swungon *see swingan.*
sýfer-liče *av.* with purity, chastely.
synder-liče *av.* separately.
syndrič *adj.* separate.
ge-syntu *f.* (health), prosperity.
tācen *n.* sign, token; miracle.
ge-tācnian *wv.* 2 signify, be-token.
ge-tācnung *f.* signification; pre-sage.
ge-tæcan *wv.* 1 teach; show. 70, 71.
tāre, tāron *see teran.*
talu *f.* tale. 17.
tam *adj.* tame.
tāwian *wv.* 2 afflict, ill-treat.
tēah *see tēon.*
teald, tealde *see tellan.*
telg *m.* dye.
tellan *wv.* 1 count, account; **tel-lan tō nāhte** 'count as nothing' [talu]. 72.
Temes *f.* Thames [*L. Tamesis*].
tempel *n.* temple [*L. templum*].
tēon *sv.* 2 draw, pull, drag. 63.
tēona *m.* injury; insult. 11.
tēon-ræden *f.* humiliation.
tēoþa *adj.* tenth.
teran *sv.* 4 tear. 65.
tēp *see tōp.*
ticčen *n.* kid.
tid *f.* time; hour. 18.
tiegan *wv.* 1 tie.
tien *num.* ten.
til *adj.* good.
tima *m.* time. 11.
ge-timbrian *wv.* 2 build. 73.
tintreg *n.* torture.
tintregian *wv.* 2 torture.
tipian *wv.* 2 *w. d. of person and g. of thing* grant, agree to.

tō *ppr. w. d. (i.) and (rarely) g. (av.) motion to; time at:* tō midre nihte 'at midnight'; for: tō langre fierste 'for a long time'; *purpose, destination for, as, towards:* tō abbone gesett 'appointed abbot'; tō þās (to that degree), so; tō þām þæt, tō þon þæt in order that. 87.

tō-berstan *sv. 3 burst, break asunder.*

tō-brecan *sv. 4 break apart.*

tō-bregdān *sv. 3 tear to pieces, pull apart.*

tō-cyme *m. coming [cuman].*

tō-dæg *av. today.*

tō-dælan *wv. 1 separate, divide [tō-däl].*

tō-dæled *aj. separate, diverse [p. pt. of tōdælan].*

tō-däl *n. separation, difference.*

tō-gēanes *ppr. w. d. towards; him to gēanes 'to meet him'. 96.*

togen *see tēon.*

tōl *n. tool, implement.*

tō-middles *ppr. w. d. in the midst of.*

torr *m. tower [L. turris].*

tō-samne *av. together.*

tō-teran *sv. 4 tear to pieces.*

tōþ *m. tooth. 22.*

tō-weard *aj. future, to come.*

tō-worpan *sv. 3 overthrow, destroy.*

trēow *n. tree.*

trēow-cynn *n. kind of tree.*

ge-trēowe *aj. true, faithful.*

trēowian *wv. 2 w. d. trust in.*

trimes *mf. drachm [L. tremissis].*

trum *aj. strong.*

trymman *wv. 1 strengthen [trum]. 71.*

trymming *f. strengthening, encouragement, confirmation.*

tū *see twēgen.*

tūcian *wv. 2 ill-treat, harass, afflict.*

tugon *see tēon.*

tūn *m. (enclosure); estate, dwelling; village, settlement. 13.*

tunge *f. tongue. 11.*

twā, twām *see twēgen.*

twēgen *num. two. 39.*

twelf *num. twelve.*

twentig *num. twenty.*

twēo *m. doubt. 11.*

þā¹ *av. cj. then; when; þā þā when; þā . . . þā correl. when . . . (then). 99.*

þā² *see se. 47.*

þām *see se.*

þær *av. there; anticipatory þær blēowon windas, &c.; combined with prps. it, that: þær-tō, &c. 'thereto, to it, in it, there'; cj. (also þær þær) where.*

þære *see se.*

þær-rihte *av. immediately.*

þæs *g. of þæt, see se; used as av. afterwards, from that time; therefore; þæs þe cj. after.*

þæt¹ *cj. that; so that; until.*

þæt² *see se.*

ge-þafian *wv. 2 allow, permit, consent.*

ge-þafung *f. consent.*

þancian *wv. 2 w. d. of person and g. of thing thank.*

þanon *av. thence, from there, away.*

þara *see se.*

þas *see þes.*

þe *rel. prn. indecl. who, which; cj. when; þe . . . þe (whether) . . . or.*

þe *see þū.*

þeah *av. though, yet, however; cj. (also þeah þe) although.*

ge-þeaht *fn. advice; counsel, consultation.*

ge-þeahtere *m. counsellor.*

þearf¹ *f. need.*

þearf² *ppv. need. 77.*

þearle *av. very, greatly, thoroughly.*

þeaw *m. custom, habit; pl. virtues, morality.*

þegen *m. servant, retainer, thane.*

^{13.}

þegnian *wv. 2 w. d. serve.*

þençan *wv. 1 think, expect. 72.*

þeod *f. people, nation. 17.*

ge-þeodan *wv. 1 join, attach oneself to.*

ge-þēode *n.* language. 16.
þeof *m.* thief.
þeon *sv.* I prosper. 62.
þeos *see þes.*
þeostru *n. pl.* darkness.
þēow *m.* servant. 13.
þēowa *m.* servant. 11.
þēow-dōm *m.* service.
þēowot *n.* servitude.
þes *prn. aj.* this. 48.
þicce *aj.* thick, dense; *av.* thickly, closely.
þicgan *sv.* 5 take, receive; eat, drink. 66.
þider *av.* thither, there.
þin *prn. aj.* thy, thine, your, yours. 43.
þinen *f.* maidservant [þegen].
þing *n.* thing, affair, condition, circumstance. 15.
þis, þisse, þissum, &c. *see þes.*
þōhte *see þençan.*
þon, þone *see se.*
þonne¹ *av. cj.* then; when; now.
þonne² *cj.* than.
þorft *see þearf².*
þræd *m.* thread.
þrēo *see þrie.*
þridda *aj.* third.
þrie *num.* three. 39.
þrim *see þrie.*
þritiȝ *num.* thirty.
þrymm *m.* glory.
þū *prn.* thou, you. 43.
þūht, þūhþe *see þynçan.*
ge-þungen *aj.* excellent, virtuous.
þurh *prp. w. a.* through, by; throughout.
þurh-þlēogan *sv.* 2 fly through.
þurh-þwunian *wv.* 2 continue, remain.
þurst *m.* thirst.
þus *av.* thus.
þūsend *n.* thousand. 40.
ge-þwār-lēcan *wv.* I agree, consent. 82.
þy *instr. of se, þæt; used as av.* therefore; *cj.* because.
þyfel *m.* bush.
þy-·læs (þe) *cj. w. subj.* lest [læs 'less'].

þylliȝ *aj.* such [þys-lic̄].
þynçan *wv.* I seem; often *im-pers. sv. d.*: mē þynçþ 'it seems to me'; sometimes in passive: wæs him geþūht 'it seemed to him' [þençan]. 72.
þyrel *u.* hole [þurh].

ufe-weard *aj.* upper, at the top of.
un-ā-rimed-lic̄ *aj.* innumer-able countless [rim].
unc *see ic̄.*
un-cūþ *aj.* unknown.
un-ge-cynde *aj.* not of royal stock.
under *prp. w. d. a.* under; in the circumstances of.
under-be-·ginnan *sv.* 3 under-take.
under-cyning *m.* under-king, tributary king.
under-·delfan *sv.* 3 dig under.
under-·fōn *sv.* 7 receive, take.
under-·geat *see under-·gietan.*
under-·gietan *sv.* 5 understand, perceive. 66.
undern-tid *f.* the third hour of the day, 9 a.m.
under-·standan *sv.* 6 under-stand.
un-forht *aj.* unafraid, dauntless.
un-for-·molsnod *aj.* (*p. pt.*) un-decayed.
un-gléaw *aj. w. g.* ignorant.
un-hālgod *aj.* (*p. pt.*) unconsecrated.
un-hiere *aj.* savage, frightful, monstrous.
un-hier-lic̄ *aj.* savage, frightful.
un-ge-hier-sum *aj. w. d.* dis-obedient.
un-hold *aj.* hostile.
un-ge-lærð *aj.* uneducated, ignorant.
un-lūcan *sv.* 2 unlock.
un-ge-met-lic̄ *aj.* immense [metan].
un-mihtiȝ *aj.* weak, powerless.
un-nytt *aj.* useless, unprofitable.
un-rim *n.* countless number.
un-ge-sælig *aj.* unhappy, accursed.

un-tiemende *aj.* barren [*pres.* *pt. of tieman* 'bring forth'].

un-ge-pwær-nes *f.* discord.

un-wis *aj.* *w. g.* ignorant, uninformed.

un-wittig *aj.* innocent, simple; foolish.

un-writere *m.* bad, inaccurate scribe.

ūp *av.* up.

üp-ā-hefed-nes *f.* conceit, arrogance.

üp-flōr *f.* (*d. sg. -a*) upper floor, upper story.

uppen *prp. w. d.* on, upon.

üre *prn. aj.* our, ours. 42, 46.

urnon *see iernan.*

üs *see ic.*

üt *av.* out.

utan *av.* from outside.

ütane *av.* from outside.

üterra *aj.* *cp.* outer. 34.

waçian *wv.* 2 be awake, watch.

wædla *m.* poor man.

wæg *f.* weight.

wæl *n.* slaughter, carnage; *mīel* *wæl geslēan* 'do great slaughter'.

wæl-hrēow *aj.* cruel.

wæl-hrēow-līce *av.* cruelly, savagely.

wæl-hrēow-nes *f.* cruelty.

wæpen *n.* weapon, arm. 15.

wæpned-cynn *n.* male line.

wæron, wæs *see wesan.*

wæstm *m.* (growth), fruit.

wæter *n.* water. 15.

wæter-scipe *m.* piece of water, water.

wäfung *f.* (spectacle), display.

wana *aj.* *indecl.*, *w.* numerals wanting, less.

-ware *m. pl. (only in composition)* dwellers, inhabitants [*orig.* 'defenders', *cf.* *werian*].

wät *see witan.*

wē *see ic.*

weahte *see weccan.*

weald *m.* forest. 13.

ge-weald *n.* power, control; *ic näh geweald* 'I cannot help it'.

ge-wealdan *sv. 7 w. g. or a.* rule, control, have power over. 68.

wealdend *m.* ruler, lord (*often of God*).

Wealh *m.* (*pl.* Wēlas) Briton, Welshman (*orig.* foreigner).

weall *m.* wall [*L.* uallum].

weallan *sv. 7* boil; swarm. 68.

weardere *m.* (keeper), dweller.

wearg *m.* felon, criminal [*orig.* wolf, *then* outlaw].

wearm *aj.* warm.

ge-wearmian *wv. 2* get warm.

wearnian *wv. 2* warn, caution.

wearp *see weorpan.*

wearþ *see weorþan.*

weaxan *sv. 7* grow, increase. 68.

weccan *wv. 1* wake. 72.

wecg *m.* (mass of) metal.

weg *m.* way, road, path. 13.

wel *av.* well; *cp.* *bet, sēl, sp.* *betst, sēlest.* 37.

weler *m.* lip.

welig *aj.* rich.

wel-willend-nes *f.* benevolence.

wēn *f.* hope. 18.

wēnan *wv. 1* think, expect.

ge-wendan *wv. 1* turn; go; return [*windan*]. 71.

wēofod *n.* altar.

weoloc *m.* whelk, murex.

weoloc-rēad *aj.* scarlet, purple.

weoloc-sciell *f.* whelk, shellfish.

weorc *n.* work, deed, act.

ge-weorc *n.* fortification.

weorpan *sv. 3* throw. 64.

weorþ *n.* worth, value.

weorþan *sv. 3* become; happen; *wurdon at spræce* 'talked together'. 64.

ge-weorþan *sv. 3 impers. w. d. a.* him *gewearþ* 'they agreed upon'; *hine gewierþ* 'he pleases'.

weorþ-full *aj.* worthy, honourable.

weorþian *wv. 2* honour, worship; exalt. 73.

weorþ-līce *av.* (honourably), splendidly.

weorþ-mynd *fn.* honour.

weorþ-nes *f.* honour; splendour.

wēox, wēoxon *see weaxan.*
 wēpan sv. 7 weep. 68.
 wer m. man. 13.
 werian wv. 1 defend. 70, 71.
 werod n. troop, army, force. 15.
 wesan v. be. 78.
 west av. westwards.
 west-dāl m. western part, west.
 wēste aj. waste, desolate, deserted.
West-seaxe m. pl. West Saxons, people of Wessex. 14.
 wīc n. dwelling; pl. camp.
 wician wv. 2 (dwell); camp, be encamped.
 wīcīng m. viking, pirate [wīc].
 wīc-stōw f. (often pl.) camp.
 wicu f. week. 17.
 wīd aj. wide.
 wide av. widely, far and wide.
 widewe f. widow.
 ge-wieldan wv. 1 overpower, conquer [wealdan].
 wiell m. spring, fountain.
 wiellan wv. 1 tr. boil [weallan].
 wiell-ge-spring n. spring.
 wielts *see wealdan.*
 wierdan wv. 1 injure, damage.
 wierman wv. 1 warm [wearm].
 wierþe aj. w. g. worthy, deserving [weorþ].
 wif n. woman; wife. 9, 15.
 wif-cynn n. female line.
 wif-mann m. woman. 9.
 wiht f. creature; thing.
Wiht f. the Isle of Wight [*L. Uectis*].
Wiht-ware m. pl. people of Wight.
 wildēor n. wild beast.
 willa m. will, desire; hiera wil-lum 'of their own accord'.
 willan v. will, wish. 79, 92.
 ge-wilnian wv. 2 w. g. desire.
 win n. wine [*L. uinum*].
 wind m. wind. 13.
 windan sv. 3 wind. 64.
 wine m. friend. 13, 14.
 win-géard m. vineyard.
 ge-winn n. warfare, conflict.
 winnan sv. 3 fight. 64.
 ge-winnan sv. 3 win, gain.

winter mn. (d. sg. wintra, nom. pl. winter) winter; in reckoning time year. 13.
 winter-setl n. winter quarters.
 winter-tid f. winter-time.
 wīs aj. wise.
 wīs-dām m. wisdom, knowledge, learning.
 wise f. (wise), way; matter, thing; usage, idiom. 11.
 wīs-lic aj. wise, prudent.
 ge-wīssian wv. 2 w. d. or a. guide, direct.
 ge-wīss-lic aj. certain, sure.
 wissung f. guidance, direction.
 wiste, wiston *see witan.*
 wit see ic.
 wita m. councillor, adviser, sage.
 witan v. know. 76.
 ge-witan sv. 1 depart, go. 62.
 wite n. punishment. 16.
 witega m. prophet, sage.
 witod-līce av. truly, indeed; and [witan].
 ge-witon *see ge-witan.*
 ge-witt n. wits, intelligence, understanding [witan].
 wīp prp. w. d. a. towards; hostility against; association, sharing with; exchange, price for, in consideration of; wīp þām þe provided, on consideration, that.
 wīp-meten-nes f. comparison [metān].
 wīp-sacan sv. 6 w. d. deny, renounce, forsake.
 wīp-standan sv. 6 w. d. withstand, resist.
 white m. beauty, splendour.
 wōd aj. mad.
 wōd-līce av. madly.
 wōh n. wrong, error.
 wolde, woldon *see willan.*
 wōp m. weeping [wēpan].
 word n. word; sentence; subject of talk, question, answer, report.
 worden *see weorþan.*
 worht, -e, -on *see wyrðan.*
 worpen *see weorpan.*

woruld *f.* world.
wōs *n.* juice.
wrecan *sv.* 5 avenge. 66.
wrēgan *wv.* I accuse, bring a charge against.
wringan *sv.* 3 wring. 64.
ge-writ *n.* writing; letter [writan].
writan *sv.* I write. 62.
writere *m.* writer, scribe.
wudu *m.* wood. 19.
wuldor *n.* glory.
wuldrian *wv.* 2 glorify, extol.
wulf *m.* wolf.
wull *f.* wool.
ge-wuna *m.* habit, custom. 11.
wund *f.* wound.
wundor *n.* wonder, miracle. 15.
wundor-lič *aj.* wonderful, wondrous.
wundor-liče *av.* wonderfully, in a miraculous way.
wundrian *wv.* 2 *w. g.* wonder, marvel.
ge-wune-lič *aj.* customary, habitual.
wunian *wv.* 2 dwell, live; stay, continue [gewuna]. 73.
ge-wunnen *see ge-winnan.*

wunung *f.* dwelling.
wurde, wurdon *see weorþan.*
wurpon *see weorpan.*
wynn *f.* joy. 18.
ge-wyrčan *wv.* I work, make; build; do, perform, carry out [weorc]. 72.
wyrd *f.* fate. 18.
wyrhta *m.* worker, labourer. 11.
wyrm *m.* (worm), serpent.
wyrt *f.* herb, plant; crop. 18.
wyrt-truma *m.* root.
ge-wyscan *wv.* I *w. g.* wish (for).
yfel¹ *n.* evil, wrong.
yfel² *aj.* evil, bad. 29, 33.
yfle *av.* badly. 37.
ymb, ymbe *prp. w. a.* around; time about; bēon ymbe 'have to do with'.
ymb-æernan *wv.* I travel round, circumnavigate.
ymb-sittan *sv.* 5 surround, besiege.
ymb-ütan *av.* round about.
ÿterra *aj. cp.* outer; *sp.* ÿtemest outermost, last [üt]. 34.
ÿþ *f.* wave.

PRINTED IN
GREAT BRITAIN
AT THE
UNIVERSITY PRESS
OXFORD
BY
CHARLES BATEY
PRINTER
TO THE
UNIVERSITY

